

# CONTENTS

# PROSE AND POETRY

1	Hero		Grandma Climbs A Tree
2	The Girl By The Tracks		Quality Of Mercy
3	Gentlemen of Rio En Medio		I am The Land
4	Dr. B.R. Ambedkar		Song of Nation
5	The Concert		Jazz Poem Two
6	The Discovery		Ballad Of The Tempest
7	Colours Of Silence		The Blind Boy
8	Science & Hope of Survival		Off To Outer Space Tomorrow Morning
-	-	EMENT	ARY READING
1	Narayanpur Incident		2 On Top Of The World
3	A Great Martyar Ever Cherished		4 Bird of Happiness
1	Vocabulary		
	Vocabalary	Par	t-B
	1 Reading 2 Writing	3 Gram	• =
Areas to	be covered in Grammar and Voc		
Vocabu		abulary	Grammar
Prefixes	•	Preposi	
Colloca		Fiepusi	Articles
Syllabu			
			Linking verbs Model Verb
•	g words		
Opposit			Tense form of verbs
	form of word		Rearranging words in a
One wo			proper order
Suffixes			Passive voice
Synony			Framing Questions
Silent L			Question Tag
	hones and Homonyms		Finite and nonfinite verbs
Matchin	ng Proverbs		infinitives
Deed	-		Primary Auxiliary verbs
Readin	-		Beginning sentence with
	liar passages		Never, If, As soon as
Sequen	•		Using Correct sentence
Dialogu	e		with linking words
Graph			Reported speech
Flow ch	art		Degrees of Comparison
Мар			
Writing	•		
Letter V	-		
Profile \			
Outline	story		
Editing			

SSLC ENGLISH (Second Language) DESIGN & BLUE PRINT-2017	1
1 Weightage to Objectives	

S No	Objectives	%	Marks
1	Remembering	15%	12
2	Comprehension	40%	32
3	Expression	40%	32
4	Appreciation	5%	4
	Total	100%	80

# 2. Weightage to Content

1     Prose       2     Poetry       3     Supplementary Reading	24 16
2 1004	16
3 Supplementary Reading	
	4
4 Vocabulary	4
5 Reading	8
6 Writing	10
7 Grammar	10
8 Reference	4
Total	80

## 3. Weightage to types of questions

Sl No	Types of Questions	No of Questions	Marks	Total
1	Multiple Choice	8	1	8
2	Very Short Answer	19	16x1=16, 3x2=6	22
3	Short Answer-1	9	2	18
S4	Short Answer-2	5	3,4	16
5	Lon Answer-1	4	4	16
7	Total	45		80

## 4. Weightage to difficulty level

[	Easy	Average	Difficulty	Total
	24	40	16	80

## 5. Distribution of Marks

Type Of	Prose	Poetry	Suppl	Vocab	Gram	Readin	Writi	Referen	Total	Mark
Questions			ement	ulary	mar	g	ng	ce	quest	S
			ary						ion	
M C Q	3x1=3	1x1=1			4x1=4				8	8
Very Short				4x1=4	2x1=2	8x1=8	1x2=2	2x1=2	19	22
Ans					1x2=2			1x2=2		
Short Ans	4x2=8	2x2=4	2x2=4		1x2=2				9	18
1										
Short Ans	3x3=9	1x3=3							5	16
2		1x4=4								
Lon	1x4=4	1x4=4					2x4=8		4	16
Answer 1										
<b>Total Marks</b>	24	16	4	4	10	8	10	4		80

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

SSLC - ENGLISH - 2018

		HEI	30	
мп	LTIPLE CHOICE QUI			
1)	Swami's father was	а		
•	a) teacher	b) doctor	c) <u>lawyer</u>	d)police
2)	The interesting new a) five burglars were c) the bravery of a v d) a burglar was caug	arrested <u>rillage lad fought v</u>	<li>b) a girl met with</li>	
3)	half-a-day he did so a) He wanted to watc	because. h the tiger from the	top of a tree.	
	•	-	-	take rest for some time.
4)	The important thing a) Courage	b) strength	c) age	d) allof them
5)	A frightful proposition a) sleeping beside grace c) sleeping in the of	anny ffice room alone	b) fighting with a	
6)	Swami always slept a) his mother		c) his brother	d) his grand father
7)	,	ad become a comn b) sleeping in th	nand <sup>"</sup> . What does c <u>e office room alor</u>	ommand refer to here?
8)	The disgraceful thin a) sleeping beside h c) being coward		<b>aby</b> b) arguing with	
9)	Swami's grandmoth a) telling stories to s	Swami	re she went to be b)singing songs	<b>d was</b> for Swami to sleep
	c) eating fruits singing		d)writing her dia	•
	When Swami's fathe a) an apparition	b) a brave man	ami's blanket,for S c) burglar	
	Swamiwas supporte a) father	<u>b) granny</u>	c) headmaster	'
13)	Swami thought the sa a) <u>under the bench</u>		ne reassuring place c) on the cot	e in the office room was d) on the table
14)	<b>Swami saw a movin</b> a) his shadow	g creature in the r b) a scorpion	oom.lt was <u>c)a man</u>	d) a devil
15.	Swami said that the a. He saw the scorpion c. he was afraid of sco	is behind the books b	pefore b. the room w	
16.	<b>Swami's father want</b> a) be brave c) he disliked him	t <b>ed him to sleep a</b> b) test his coura d) develop good h	ge	oom to
Com	plete Solution (Questions	& Answers) 4	SSI	LC - ENGLISH - 2018

17)	Swami was apprecia			
	a) class teacher	b) friends	c) father	d) head master
18)	Swami did not want t	o be a _		
	a) bus conductor	b) engine driver	<u>c) police</u>	d) railway guard
19)	Swami became a her	o when he caught t	he	
	a) snake	b) ghost	c) tiger	<u>d) burglar</u>

# ANSWER THE FOLLOWING IN TWO -THREE SENTENCES (2 MARKS QUESTIONS)

- 1) Swami's father drew his attention to a report in the newspaper. What was the report about?
- Ans: The newspaper report was about the braver of a village lad who while returning home fought with a tiger. He stayed half a day on the tree till some people came and killed the tiger.
- 2) What was swami's comment on the news paper report? How did his view differ from that of his father?
- Ans. Swami commented that the boy can not kill the tiger and he must be a grown –up person. But Swami's father commented that one who has courage can do anything and strength and age are not important. but for swami strength and age are important rather than courage.

# 3) What desperate attempts did Swami make to escape from his father?

He tried to change the subject by asking his father to join the cricket club.
 He requested his father to allow him to sleep in the office room from the first of next month.

3. He went silently and pretended like sleeping beside his granny.

4. When he was following his father to office room he looked at his mother and granny.5. He told his father that there were scorpions behind the law books in the office room.

- 4) Why do you think Swami looked at his granny and his mother while following his father to the office room?
- Ans. Swami looked at his granny and his mother while following his father to the office room because he thought they would stop his father taking him to the office room and support him. He did not like to sleep on the office room alone.

# 5) As silence deepened in the room, what was Swami reminded of?

Ans: As silence deepened in the room Swami reminded the stories of devils and ghosts he had heard in his life. For example His Chum Mani had seen the devil in the banyan tree at his street end and the poor Muniswami's father spat out blood when he devil slapped him near the river.

# 6) Why did Swami feel that his father's proposition was frightful?

- Ans: Swami thought his proposition was frightful. Because he always slept beside his granny in the passage, and any change in this arrangement kept him awake all the night.
- 7) There was absolute silence in the room. in spite of it, some noises reached Swami's ears. What were they?
- Ans: In silence in the office room Swami heard some noises -the tickling off the clock, rustling of trees, snoring sound, humming sound of vague.

# 8) As night advanced, Swami felt that something terrible would happen to him. What would it be? How would it happen?

- Ans: It would be devil. As night advanced, Swami felt that something terrible would happen to him. Hethought that the devils would come up to him and carry him away
- 9) How was Swami honored by his classmates, teacher and the headmaster?
- Ans: His classmates looked at him with respect, and his teacher patted his back. The headmaster said that he was a true scout.

# 10) Why were congratulations showered on Swami the next day?

Ans: Congratulations were showered on Swami the next day because Swami slept alone in the office room and he was able to catch the notorious house breaker of the district and helped the police.

# 11) Why did father want Swami to sleep alone in the office room?

Ans: Father wanted Swami to sleep alone in the office room because he wanted Swami to sleep alone in the office room to show his courage. He also wanted Swami to stop sleeping beside his granny like a baby and develop courage good habit.

# 12) Why did Swami feel relieved at the end?

Ans: Swami felt relieved at the end because his father gave up the idea of making him sleep alone in the office room there after.

# 13) Do you think Swami really wanted to join the police? If not, what did he want tobe?

Ans: Swami did not want to join the police. He wanted to be an engine driver, a railway guard, or a bus conductor later in life.

# 15) Why did Swami say that there were scorpions behind the law books?

Ans: Swami said that there were scorpions behind the law books because he did not like to sleep in the office room and it was just a trick to escape from his father.

# 16) How were Swami's openion different than his father's view on courage?

Ans: Swami had different openion than his father. he thought that age and strnght of man is very important. His father believed that courage is important, a man can do everything if he has courage.

# 17) Did Swami and his father have same openion on Courage? if yes / not give reasons.

Ans: No, They had diffent openinon. Swami had different openion than his father. he thought that age and strnght of man is very important. His father believed that courage is important, a man can do everything if he has courage.

# 18 Why do You think His headmastrer called Swami was a true scout?

Ans: Swami slept alone in the office room and he was able to catch the notorious house breaker of the district. it was a gteat show of Swami's bravery and courage.so head-master called him

# 19. How did Swami react when his father asked him to sleep in the office room?

Ans: Swami was afraid of darkness. when his father challenged to sleep he thought the challange was frightful. he also tried to change the subject.

# 20 What thoughts came to his mind when his father made him sleep in the office room?

Ans:Swami thought he father was a cruel nature person. He hated the news paper for printing the story. he also wished that tiger had not spared the boy.

# EXTRACTS (3 marks)

- 1) "1 think he must have been a very strong and grown-up person, not a boy at all.How could a boy fight a tiger?"
- a) Who is the speaker? /Who said this?

Ans: Swami

- b) What does the speaker mean by this statement?
- Ans: The speaker means that the news paper report was wrong as the boy cannot fighta tiger and he must have been a grownup person.
- c. what do you understand about speaker?

Ans: The speaker means that he believes that strength and age are important

- 2) "How can it be father? Suppose I have all the courage what could I do if a tiger should attack me?"
- a) Who is the speaker? /Who asked this?

Ans: Swami

- b) Why did the speaker say so?
- Ans-The speaker means that he believes that strength and age are important.
- c) How did the response affect him?

Ans: His father challenged him to sleep alone in the office room to show his courage

# 3) "Leave alone strength, can you prove that you have courage?

- a) Who posed this challenge to whom?
- Ans : Swami's Father challanged to his son Swami.
- b) Did he accept the challenge?
- Ans: No, He did not accept the challenge.
- c) What was the response?
- Ans Swami thoutht that It was a frightful proposition for him.
- 4) "From the first of the next month, I'll sleep alone father."
- a) Who wanted to sleep alone?
- Ans: Swamiwanted to sleep alone.
- b) Why did he request his father to allow him sleep alone from the first of next month?

Ans: He requested his father to allow him to sleep from the first of next month only to escape from his father.

- c. What reply did speaker get?
- Ans Swami's father told him to sleep in the offece room that day itself.
- 5) "No, you must do it now, You are in the second form and I don't like the way you are being brought up"
- a) Who commanded like this?
- Ans: Swami's father commanded Swami like this.
- b) What is second form mean here?
- Ans: Swami slept beside his granny or mother like a baby. he was not being brought like a courageous and brave boy.
- c) Why did the speaker make the statement?
- Ans: Father was not happy with the way his son was being brought up. He wanted his son to be more courageous

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

# 6) "Dont cover your face. are you really very sleepy?"

a) Who do you think is the speaker?

Áns: Granny

b) Did he really getting sleep?

Ans: No

- c) Why do you thing he was covering his face?/ Why did he behave like that?
- Ans: Swami's father commended him sleep in the office room in that night. he wanted to escape from sleeping as he was afread of darkness. he he was behaving like that.
- 7) "Boy, are you already feeling sleepy? dont you want to hear a story?
- a) Who is the boy here?

Ans: Swami

- b) Who is the speaker?
- Áns: Granny
- c) What do you think speaker made the statement?
- ans: Swami slpet early that day without hearing stories
- d) What made the Boy sleep early)
- Ans: His father commanded him to sleep in the office room in that night.
- 8) "I hardly know anything about the boy"
- a) Who is the pronoun 'I' refered here?
- Ans: I refer to Swami's mother
- b) When did speaker make the statement?
- Ans: When looked at his wife with agryness and disappointement for bringing his son discourageously
- c) What does the statement mean?
- Ans: Swami's father didn't know about the boy was being brought up. his granny was looked him up
- 9) "Please, please shut up granny. Don't talk to me, and don't let anyone call me even if the house is on fire. If I don't sleep at once, perhaps I shall die."
- a) Who requested like this?
- Ans: Swami requested his granny.
- b) Why did he request so?
- Ans: Because he wanted to escape from his father by just pretending to be asleep.
- c) Did swami success in his effort?
- Ans No

# 10) "Why do you distarb him"

- a) Who do you thnk is the speaker of the statement?
- Ans: Granny
- b) Who was distarbing him?
- Ans: Swami's father was distarbing him
- c) Why did speaker make the statement?
- Ans: Swami's father was waking him up very often. he wanted him to sleep in the office room.
- 11) "let me sleep in the hall, Father, Your office room is very dusty and there may be scorpions behind your law books"
- a) Who wanted to sleep in the hall?
- Ans: Swami wanted to sleep in the hall.

b) Why did the speaker complain that there were scorpions in the office room? Ans: No, There were no scorpions actually. It was just a trick to escape from his father.

8

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

c) Why did father want him to sleep in the office room?

Ans: to make him courageous boy.

# 12) I'll make you the laughing stock of your school

- a) Who is the pronoun 'you' referred here?
- Áns: Swami
- b) Who wanted to make him the laughing stock of his school?
- Ans: Swami's father wanted to make Swami the laughing stock of his school.
- c) Why did speaker tell like that?
- Ans: Because Swami used to sleep beside his granny like a baby. He wanted him to be courageous

# 13) "Aiyo! Something has bitten me,

- a) Who cried "Aiyo! Something has bitten me," ?
- Ans: The burglar cried.
- b) Why caused him to make an agonized cry?
- Ans: As he entered the office room swami saw him and managed to catch his leg and bite with his teeth.
- c) When did he make agonized cry?
- Ans: when the burglar try to enter the office room through the window Swami caught his leg and bit him
- 14) "No, You must learn not to be afraid of darkness. It is only a question of habit.You must cultivate good habits."
- a) Who was afraid of darkness?
- Ans: Swami was afraid of darkness.
- b) What was the good habit according to the speaker?
- ans: Sleeping along at the passage with courage in the dark night is the good habit./ developing coutage and becoming brave was the good habit.
- c) Why did speaker suggest so?
- Ans: Because swami had the habit of sleeping beside his granny like a baby. He wanted him to get courage.

# 15. Why don't you join the police when you are grown up?

- a) Who gave this suggestion?
- Ans: Police inspector
- b) Why did he give the suggestion?
- Ans: Swami cought a notorious robber of the district.
- c) Did Swami really interest to jon police?What di listener want to become?
- Ans: No. he wated to become railway guard, engine driveer or bus conducter

# 16) "He didn't have a wink of sleep the whole of last night"

- a) Who is the speaker?
- Ans: Swamis mother
- b) When was the statement made?
- Ans: When Swami's father returned from office and asked about Swami.
- c) Why do you think he didn't have a wink of sleep last night?
- Ans: Last night he slept in the office room so he didn't get sleep because he was aftraid of darnkenss

## 17. "You let him sleep where he likes, you needn't risk his life again"

## a) Who is the speaker?

Ans: Swami's mother

b) What risk was the speaker talking about?

Ans: Swamis father made his sleep in the office room to make his courages boy but Where he cought the notorious robber of the district.

## c) When was the statement made?

Ans:after returning from his office he saw Swami had already slept then expressed his disappointment

## IV. Answer each of the following questions in a paragraph of 8-10 sentences

- 1. A report about a boy in the newspaper was an unexpected event in Swami's life.Justify.
- Ans. The newspaper carried a report about a village lad who had fought bravelyagainst a tiger, while he was returning home by the jungle path. Swami argued that a boy could not fight a tiger, it had to be a strong, grown-up person. His father disagreed saying that courage was more important. Swami was not ready to accept this. His father then challenged him to show his courage by sleeping alone in the office that night. While Swami was sleeping there, he saw a dark figure. Believing it to be the devil. Swami dug his teeth into its leg. It turned out to be a notorious burglar whose loud cry brought others to the scene. The burglar was caught and Swami became ahero over night.

## 2. What desperate attempts did Swami make to escape from his father?

Ans. Swami's father challenged him to sleep alone in the office room that night. Swami was filled with fear and tried desperately to make his father change his mind. He told his father that he would sleep alone from the first of the next month. But his father did not agree. Swami then went to sleep near his granny, pulled the blanket over his face and pretended to be fast asleep. However, his father soon came there and pulled him out of bed. Swami tried to appeal to his mother and granny but not successful. Then swami told his father that office room was dusty and scorpions were there. Swami's father didn't leave him but made him sleep in the office room.

# 3. Narrate Swami's dreadful experience when he was lying under the bench.

Ans. Swami crept under the bench, shut his eyes light and covered himself with the blanket. Soon he fell asleep. He began to have a nightmare that a tiger was chasing him. He tried to escape. He groaned in despair. He put his hand out to feel hisgranny's presence, but he touched wooden leg of the bench. He moved to the edge of the bench and thought that the devil would pull him out and tear him as it came nearer, he crawled, hugged and used his teeth on it like a mortal weapon. Swami had a dreadful experience under the bench.

## 4. Narrate how a coward boy Swami became a hero overnight?

Ans. Swami inevitably had to sleep in the office room. He spent that tight with thefear of the devils and the nightmares. Then He saw something moving in darkness. He thought that his end had come and the devil had come to carry him away. Finally as an attempt for survival he hugged it with all his might, and used his teeth as mortal weapon on it. It was not the devil but the burglar who cried with agony and fell amidst the furniture with a bleeding ankle. The notorious house breaker of the district was arrested by the police. The police were grateful to him. His classmates looked upon him with respect, his teacher patted him and his head master appreciated that he was a true scout. Thus unknowingly Swami became a 'hero'overnight.

# GRANDMA CLIMBS A TREE

**MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS :** 1). The Grandma was called genius because A. she could climb trees very quickly B. spent her old age gracefully C.she loved trees D. she lived on trees 2) The grandma was happier in A. town **B.village** C. trees D.field 3) The grandma in her bed felt like a A. heaven B. joyful place C. comfortable place D. a hell All that grandma wanted was 3) A. A house on the tree top B. good house C. a simple house **D.natural living** 4) The responsibility of building a house on tree top wast aken up by-B.poet's father C. her neighbors D.loving relatives A. the poet Building a house on tree top was assisted by 5) A. neighbors B. her relatives C. her husband D.the poet 6) The neighbors told the Grandma stop climbing trees because they wanted to B. spend her old age gracefully A. stop her C. give her rest D. test her 7) The grandma was taught climbing trees from her A. loving brother B. loving mother C. loving son D. loving husband 8) When grandma climbed a tree for the last time she was A. six B. hundred C. sixty two D. eighty When the doctor took Granny's temperature ,he suggested her\_ 9) A. not to climb trees B.live gracefully C.a quiet week in bed D.healthy food habits 10) When the-doctor suggested granny a quiet week in bed, the family members felt \_. A. <u>sighed with relief</u> B. angry with the granny <u>C. rejoiced</u> D. unhappy 11) 'My dad knew his duties'. His duty was A. take care of his mother 12) Finally the granny upheld her right to\_ A. residing in a tree B. drink sherry C. live as she wished D. spend her old age graceful 16) "It was like a brief season in the hell" The figure of speech employed here is\_ <u>C. simile</u> A. personification B.metaphor D.synecdoche ANSWER THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS IN TWO OR THREE SENTENCES(2 MARKS) 1) The poet Ruskin Bond does not call his grandmother 'childish'. What elsewas she according to him? Why does he consider her to be so? or What is the uncommon quality of the grandmother? How does the term this uncommon quality?

SSLC - ENGLISH - 2018

- Ans. The poet Ruskin Bond calls his grandma a 'genius' because she could climb trees very quickly. It may be a spreading tree or tall tree she could climb up quickly even at the age of sixty-two.
- 2) How do you say that grandma had been in the habit of climbing trees for avery long period? Justify this by quoting the lines from the poem.
- Ans. Yes, The grandma had been the habit of climbing trees for a long time. She learnt climbing the from her loving brother when she was six. Having learned to climb from a loving brother when she was six.

# 3) What did the neighbor's advise the Grandma? How did she respond them?

- Ans. The neighbors advised that the grandma should stop climbing the trees asshe was growing old. They suggested that old people should spend their old age gracefully.But the grandma did not listen to their advice. She would laugh say that "I'll grow disgrace-fully. I can do it better".
- 4) Others feared that granny would fall from a tree one day or the other.Did this happen? Or did something else happen?
- Ans. Yes, others feared that granny would fall from a tree one day or the other. It did not happen. One day something different happened. When the poetand his family were in the town, she climbed up a tree but could not come down. She was suffering from fever. The doctor checked her temperature and suggested her bed rest for a week.
- 5) What did the doctor recommend Grandma? What was the reaction of the kids to this advice?
- Ans. The doctor checked granny's temperature and recommended her bed rest for a week. The kids sighed with a relief that she would not climb up trees and risk her life.
- 6) 'My dad knew his duties'. What did he think his duty was?
- Ans. 'My dad' (the poets father /granny's son) knew his duties. He thought his duty was to fulfill his mother's wish. He built a house on the tree top for his mother with the help from the poet.

7) Both the poet and his father were considerate towards Grandma.Substantiate the statement.

Ans. The poet and his father were considerate towards grandma. Theybuilt a house on a tree-top with windows and a door. My dad knew hisduties. He said, That's all right-

# 8. How did Grandma feelwhile she lays in bed?

Ans. Grandma felt miserable as she lay in bed. Sheloved to look at the dancing leaves. For her, it was like a brief season in hell.

# Extracts (3 marks)

1)	"Ever since childhood, she'd had this gift For being happier than in a lift;"					
	a) Who does 'she' refer to ?	Ans :She refers to Granny				
	b) What was the gift she had?	Ans: Climbing the tree was the gift she had.				
	c) Where was she happier?	Ans: She was happier in a tree than in city life.				
2)	'Well I'll grow disgracefully,I ca	n do it better'				
	A) Who said this to whom?	Ans: Granny said this to her neighbors.				
	B) What was disgraceful?	Ans- Climbing tree at the age of 62 was disgraceful				

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

c) Why did she say so?

Ans: She had a passion of climbing tree and she would be happier on it

# 3) But it was feared by all that one day she'd have terrible fall. The outcome was different.

- A) Who does all refer here? Ans- Neighbors.
- B) Why do they fear of her fall? Ans- she was 62 years old so she would fall.
- c) What was the different outcome? Ans- She climbed the tree successfully

# 4) 'I strongly recommend her a quiet week in bed'

A) Who is 'l' refered here?

Ans: Doctor

- B) Why was this recomendation given? Ans: Because Granny had high fever.
- c) What was the response from others?

Ans-The kids felt a sigh of relief that she would not climb up trees.

# 5) Poor Granny! For her, it was like a brief season in hell.

- A) What was felt like a hell?
- Ans: A week in bed was felt like a hell by Granny.
  - B) Why did she feel like hell?
- Ans: Granny wanted to climb and stay on tree so she felt the bed rest was like a hell c) What was heaven to her?
- Ans- She was happy in climbing trees. It was like a heaven to her.

# 6) You'll have what you want dear I'll start work tonight.

- a) Who does 'dear' refer to?
- Ans: It refers to grandma
- b) Who is the speaker ? Ans : Grandma's son or poets father.

c) What work will the speaker want to start? Ans: Building a house on the tree

# 7) She sits there in state and drinks sherry with me. Up holding her right to reside in a tree.

a) Who do 'she' and 'me' refer to?

Ans: 'she' refers to Granny and 'me' refer to the poet Ruskin Bond.

B) What was her state?

Ans: She was in a happy state.

c) What does it tell?

Ans : It tells she enjoyed being on the tree house

# **ANSWER IN THE PARAGRAPH :**

# I. Write the summary of the poem Grandma climbs a tree.

The poem 'Grandma Climbs a Tree' is written by Ruskin Bond. He calls his grand mother as "genius" because she could climb a tree. Even at the age of 62,she was passionate to climb a tree and learnt it from her loving brother at the age of six. Everybody feared that granny would fall from a tree one day.

One day she climbed a tree but could not come down. After the rescue the doctor recommended her rest for a week. But for granny it was like brief season in hell. She demanded a house to be built in a tree. The poets father who was dutiful, fulfilled his mother's wish, so that granny moved up and enjoyed as her wish.

13

	THE GIRL BY T	
1)	Roma Talreja was a	
	a) marketing executive	b) callcentre executive
	c) unemployee	d) house wife
2)	"There's a girl by the tracks, These we	
	a) Dinesh Talreja b) Baleshwar Mishr	
•	c) People in the opposite train	d) stationmaster
3)	When Roma met with an accident, the ca) Dinesh Talrejab) the People wate	
	c) Baleshwar Mishra d) tempotruck drive	-
4)	When Roma met with an accident no o	
-,	a) They were afraid of getting involved	—
	b) They were strangers to Roma	c) they were busy in their works
	d) they were callous	
5)	When Roma fell on the tracks no one w	
	a) Dinesh Talreja	b) Baleshwar Mishra
$\sim$	c) People in the opposite train	d) station master
6)	The district where Roma met an accide a)Thane b)Mumbai	c) Pune d) Mirzapur
7)	Roma loved her job because	c) i ulle d) Milzapul
')	a) the job fetched a handsome salary	
	b) she could talk to many people and m	aking new friends
	c) it was a respectfuljob d) she worked	d for her livelihood
8)	Roma's fiancé was	
	a) Dinesh Talreja b) Baleshwar Mishr	a c) Callcentre executive <u>d)Vijay</u>
9)	Baleshwar Mishra was an unemployee	
	a) He was from U.P c) He was looking for good jobs d) He had t	a high- school dropout
10)		•
10)	When Baleshwar pleaded for help from cept the	the motorists, hobody helped him ex-
	a) railway guard b) doctor <u>c) temp</u>	o- truck driver d)on duty physician
11)	"Take the girl to Airoli", suggested the o	
,	him.Because	
	a) There was no good hospital.	<u>b) It was 10 kilometers away</u>
	c)There were no equipments.	d) he did not like Airoli
12)	The physician in the small hospital gav	
	, , ,	not pay her medical expenses
12)	c) There were no personnel and equipm	
13)	The only person who volunteered to he a) railway guard b) doctor c) tempo-	truck driver d) on duty Physician
	a raiway guard b) doctor <u>cy tempo-</u>	track arreer af on daty i hysiolan
	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	

14

14)	Baleshwar had a good Memory. The line which suggest this statement is <u>a) He memorized Dinesh's cell phone number</u>
	<ul> <li>b) He remembered thenearest hospital</li> <li>c) He asked her relatives phone number</li> <li>d) He brought Roma to the hospital in time</li> </ul>
15)	Roma's brother Dinesh Talreja was a
	a) soft ware engineer b) doctor c <u>) marketing executive</u> d)shop keeper
16)	The hospital where Roma was admited and treateda at last wasa) Small hospitalb) Airoli Hospitalc) government hospitald) Divine Multi-Speciality Hospital, Ghansoli.
17)	The doctor at Divine hospital admitted Roma without any paper work because_a) She was injured seriouslyb) he was a good doctorc) It was a private hospitald) he feared that she may die
18)	Baleshwar could not thank the tempo truck driver becausea) it was just his duty to help himb) Roma was his relativec) Baleshwar did not knowhow to thank himd) he slipped away with his truck after having done all the help
19)	Baleshar revisited the spot where Roma had fallen to
,	<ul> <li>a) complain the railway police</li> <li>b) look for his belongings</li> <li>c) look for Roma's belongings</li> <li>d) inspect how the accident happened</li> </ul>
20)	Roma said "I think it's astonishing". What was astonishing? a) she was survived b) a stranger Baleshwar jumped off a train and risked his lifefor her
	c) she could never thank Baleshwar d)The doctor had done a miracle by saving her
21)	According to Baleshwar the people of Mumbai could help at the time of accidentsbecause
	<ul> <li>a) They were very busy.</li> <li>b) they were callous to others</li> <li>c) They were afraid of getting trapped in courts or with the police</li> <li>d) They don't help strangers.</li> </ul>
ANS	SWER IN 2-3 SENTENCE :
1.	How did Roma fall on the tracks?
Ans	Roma had squeezed herself near the door of the crowded ladies compartment of a Mumbai local train. Suddenly she got pushed, lost her foothold and was thrown out of the coach.
2.	The doctor at the Divine Multispecialty hospital admitted Roma without any formalities. What made him do so?
Ans	The doctor Anil Agarwal admitted Roma to the ICU at the Divine Multi specialty hospi- tal without formalities, because she was injured seriously.

- 3. What did Baleshwar Mishra do as soon as he saw the girl lying next to the tracks?
- Ans. On seeing the Girl on the tracks, Baleshwar immediately pulled the red emergency chain of the train. As the train slowed, he asked the other passengers to go with him to help the girl. No one came forward. Then Baleshwar jumped off bravely from the still moving train and rushed towards the girl.

15

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

# 4. Roma Talreja tried to settle into a corner near the door in the train. Was she right in doing this?

- Ans. No, it was wrong on Roma's part to settle into a corner near the door. It was very risky as there was a great rush. People were pushing each other to stand safely in less space and she could have fallen which she did.
- 5. "It is a regular scene" Where was regular about the scene? What does the line suggest?
- Ans. The scene of commuters getting out and into the train coaches in a rush is aregular scene in India's most populated metropolis. The line suggests that the peoplein cities are busy.
- 6. "Roma Talreja tried to settle into a corner near the door in the train". Was sheright in doing this? What would you have done, if you were there?
- Ans. No, She was not right in doing this. She lost her tenuous foot hold and panicked. If I were there, I would have settled in the safe place in the coach.
- 7. "Behanji, aap theek hai?" But there was no response and no help in sight. Why was it so?
- Ans. Because she was by the Tracks senseless (unconscious). There was a large wound behind her head and blood was flowing out. So there was no response from her.
- 8. Give the details about Roma Telreja.
- Ans. Rama Telreja.was a B.Com., graduate from Pune. She was working as a call centre executive. She loved her job, talking and connecting to customers, and making new friends there. Her brother was Dinesh Talreja and she was engaged to her fiancé Vijay.
- 9. Give the details about Baleshwar Mishra.
- Ans. Baleshwar Mishra was an unemployed high-school dropout recently came to Mumbai for job. He was from Mirzapur in Uttar Pradesh
- 10. Why did the on-duty physician give only first aid to Roma and not the treatment?
- Ans. The on-duty physician could only give the basic first aid to Roma as the facility lacked personnel and equipment
- 11. "Oh,! Couldn't thank him", Baleshwar thought. Who do you think he couldn't thank?
- Ans. Baleshwar couldn't thank the tempo-truck driver who helped Baleshwar to carry Roma to the hospital. He slipped away from the hospital having done all the help
- 12. Why did Baleshwar revisit the spot where Roma has fallen?
- Ans. Roma's brother, Dinesh, had told him that her cell phone and hand bag were missing. Baleshwar revisited the spot where Roma had fallen. With the help of a railway employee he was able to recover some of her belongings.
- 13. After Roma's recovery, What did she say about Baleshwar?
- Ans: Roma was amazed to hear about the manner in which she had been rescued. She wondered how a stranger could jump off a train and risk his life for her. She could not imagine what would have happened to her if Baleshwar had not been there. She felt that she could never repay him for what he had done.
- 14. "Take the girl to Airoli", Suggested the cop. But Baleshwar disagreed. Why did hedo so?
- Ans. Baleshwar felt that the girl needed medical help immediately. Airoli was atleast 10 kilometers away and he knew of a small hospital close by. So he did notagree with the cop

# 15. Baleshwar had a good memory. Do you agree with this? Give examples to support your view.

- Ans. Yes, Baleshwar had a good memory. Roma had given him her brother's cell phone number and he memorized it quickly before she lost consciousness again. Thus he was able to contact Dinesh and inform him about the accident.
- 16. Baleshwar felt that people of Mumbai were afraid, what were they afraid of, according to his opinion?
- Ans. Baleshwar felt that people of Mumbai were afraid of getting trapped in the courts or with the police. So they were callous to the strangers even at the time of accidents.

# **Extracts:**

#### "There's a girl by the tracks!" 1.

- a. Who is the speaker?
- b. Who is the 'girl' referred here?
- c. Why was she by the tracks?

#### Let's go and help her. 2.

- a. What happened there?
- b. Why did they have to help?
- c. Who should go there?

#### 3. "Take girl to Airoli"

A. Who is the girl here?

Ans.: travelers voice Ans.: Roma Talreja Ans- she was pulled down from train

Ans. There was a girl by the tracks. Ans. She had fallen from the train. Ans- People of the train

Ans: Roma Talreja.

B) Did suggestion was accepted?Why?

Ans:No,because Airoli was at least 10 kilometers away and he knew a nearer hospital than that. She needed treatment immediately.

c) Who is the speaker of the statement?

Ans. the police

#### "Oh, I couldn't thank him," 4)

A) Who was not thanked?

Ans: Baleshwar Mishra could not thank the tempo-truck driver.

B) Why should he thank him?

Ans: Because the tempo-truck driver helped Baleshwar to take Roma Talreja tothe hospital when nobody was ready to help him. He did all the necessary help to rescue Roma. C) Why couldn't he thank him?

Ans: Because the tempo-truck driver slipped from the hospital having done allhe could.

#### 5) "I can never repay Baleshwar".

a. Who is Baleshwar? Ans : Baleshwar is a young man who helped Roma. b. Why can't she repay? Ans : He has done a great deed. He saved her life from dying. c) When did the speaker make the statement? Ans : when she came to know about Baleshwar's help

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

SSLC - ENGLISH - 2018

6.	I can't imagine what would have happened if Baleshwar hadn't been there. a.Why was Baleshwar there?		
	Ans : to help Roma		
	b) When was this statement made?		
	Ans. :When she was recoved and knowing about help		
	c) What would have happened if he had not come there?. Ans : If Baleshwar had not come forward to help Roma, She would have bled to dea		
7.	I hope I am not too late		
	A) Who does I refer here? Ans : Baleshwar		
	B) Why did he hope so?		
	Ans : He knew she was hurt badly and hoped he could help her		
	C) What did he do?		
	Ans.: He carried her to the road side and shifted her to the near by hospital.		
8.	'Chacha, can I borrow your mobile?"		
	a. Who wanted the mobile? Ans. Baleshwar		
	b. Who is the chacha here Ans. Truck driver		
	c. Why did he want the mobile?		
	Ans : To inform Roma's brother, Dinesh about her accident.		
9)	"It's a regular scene"		
	A) Which is the regular scene referred here?		
	Ans: The people swarming into the train and getting down hurriedly in populated Metropolis.		
	B) Where can one find this regular scene?		
	Ans: In populated Metropolis.		
	c) Do you think is this necessary? If not, why?		
	Ans:No, It is not necessary. Because if the people rush like that the children, women		
10)	or aged or handicapped may fall down the tracks. <b>0) "There is a girl by the tracks" the voices cried out.</b>		
10)	A) Who is the girl mentioned here? Ans: Roma Talreja is the girl referred here.		
	B) Whose voices were these?		
	Ans: People travelling in the opposite train.		
	C) Why did the voices cry out?		
	Ans: The people saw Roma Talreja falling from the train on the tracks.		
11)	) "His heart hammering his chest, Baleshwar shoved off the still- moving train".		
	A) Why was his heart hammering his chest?		
	Ans: Because he saw Roma Talreja on the tracks. But nobody came forward tohelp her.		
	B) Why did he shove off the train?		
	Ans: Because he saw if anybody was ready to help her. But nobody came forward.		
	So he volunteered to help her.		
	c) "His heart hammering his chest".What does it tell about him?		
	Ans- He was filled with fear for the girl who was on the track.		
12.	Please help me take her to a hospital		
	a. Who is the speaker. Ans.: Baleshwar Mishra.		
	b. Who does her' refer to ? Ans.: Roma Talreja		
	c. Why did he take her to the hospital?		
	Ans.: She was unconscious due to the fall and badly hurt. So he took her to the hospital.		
13)	"My sister is injured, Please help me take her to a hospital, But no one stopped.		
/	A) Who does 'sister' refer to here? Ans: 'sister' refers to Roma Talreja		
	,		

18

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

	<ul><li>B) Who requested here so?</li><li>C) Who does 'no one' refers to here?</li><li>D) Why was she taken to a hospital? What Ans: She fell down on the tracks and serior hands and requested the motorists to help</li></ul>	usly injured.So Baleshwar took her in his	
14)	"Behanji aap theek hai?".		
	a)Who does behanji refer to here? b. Who is the speaker? c)Why was there no response ?	Ans: Behanji refers to Roma Talreja. Ans.: Baleswar	
	Ans: Because Roma was injured seriously and fell on the tracks unconsciously. d) How did he help her?		
	Ans -he took her to nearby hospital where s pital due to lack of facility there	he got first aid and shifted to bigger hos-	
15)	Whom oon Looll? He asked guickly		

Whom can I call? He asked quickly, a. Who does I refer to? b. What did the listener answer? C. Why did the speaker ask quickly?

Ans : Baleshwar Mishra Ans: Dinesh Telraja Ans: fearing that she would black out once more.

# **ANSWER IIN PARAGRAPH :**

- Give a brief account of how Baleshwar helped the girl on the tracks. Or 1. Baleshwar was god sent to Roma. Justify or Describe briefly how a strangerBaleshwar risked his life for Roma Talreja?
- Ans. When Baleshwar saw the girl lying on the tracks, he jumped down from the moving train and ran towards her. There was no help in sight so he lifted her up, crossed the tracks and walked till he reached the road. He waited patiently with the girl in his arms for a long time. He stopped a number of motorists but no one heeded to his call. Finally, a tempo truck driver stopped and helped him to take the girl to a hospital nearby where she was given first aid. The doctor there advised him to take her to a larger hospital. Baleshwar did this and the girl got the necessary medical care. Within a few days she recovered finally.

#### Explain how Roma Talreja met with an accident ? 2.

- Ans. Roma was returning home .she boarded the train at the Mumbai suburban Railway station. she managed to squeeze herself into a ladies' compartment. She tried to settle into a corner near the door. The train hurtled ahead and Roma was jammed between other women. She got pushed and lost her tenuous foothold and panicked.Roma was thrown out of the coach. She fell on the tracks, bleeding. She was seriously injured behind her head.
- After Roma made a full recovery Baleshwar met her. Briefly describe how Roma 3. thanked him. What Baleshwar said in reply?
- Ans. After Roma made a full recovery, she was amazed to know how Baleshwar rescued her. She thought it is astonishing that a stranger would jump off a train and risk his life for her. she couldn't imagine what would have happened if Baleshwar hadn't been there. She could never repay him. Baleshwar replied that He was new to Mumbai and he had noticed that people there were afraid and that they feared getting involved in the courts or with the police. He accepted that he helped her only because she needed help. That day it was Roma who met with an accident, the otherday it could be himself or someone else on the tracks bleeding alone.

19

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

# **QUALITY OF MERCY**

# Multiple type questions

1. The poet says that the quality of mercy is twice blessed because

- Ans. It blesses both the giver and the taker
- 2. It droppeth as the gentle rain from heaven. Here droppeth from heaven means Ans. As pure as given from God.
- 3. His sceptre shows Here 'Sceptre' can be identified with
- Ans. A king
- **4.** A decorated rod carried by a king as a symbol of power is called a Ans. Sceptre
- 5. According to the speaker, in king's mercy is seated in the
- Ans. Heart
- 6. The earthly power looks like divine when
- Ans. Mercy tempers justice
- 7. Whose attribute does quality of mercy stands for
- Ans.God.
- 8. According to the poet the mightiest of might is
- Ans. Quality of mercy
- 9. Quality of mercy is compared to
- Ans. Gentle rain
- 10. "Sceptre shows the force of temporal power"In contrast, what or whose quality does mercy stand for?
- Ans. God's quality

# Answer in 2-3 sentence

- 1. Mercy is compared to gentle rain from heaven. How is this comparison apt? justify.
- Ans. Mercy is compared to the gentle rain from heaven to the earth. it is very apt because mercy is not forced and it should be showed naturally like rain.
- 2. The speaker says mercy is twice blessed. What does she mean by this?
- Ans. The quality of mercy is twice blessed. The person who shows mercy gets the blessing as he has helped the other person. The taker is blest because he isforgiven.
- 3. The scepter shows the force of temporal power. In contrast what or whose quality does mercy stands for?
- Ans. sceptre is a symbol of worldly power of a king. It creates fear among people.Mercy is divine power and is seated in the heart of king.
- 4. How do you justify that mercy is the mightiest when compared to the power of king.
- Ans. The king who has sceptre in his hand creates a feeling of fear in the minds of others but the king who .has a feeling of mercy in his heart possesses divine quality of mercy.

# Extracts :

- 1) It is twice blessed; it blesseth him that gives, and him that takes.
  - A) Who that blessed twice?
    B) How do you say that it is blessed twice?
    Ans: It is blessed both by the giver and the taker.
    Ans: The giver gots the blessed twice?
  - C) How does it blessed twice? Ans- The giver gets the blessing as he has helped the other person. The taker isblest because he is forgiven
- 2) The throned monarch better than his crown. His scepter shows the force of temporal power.
   A) Who says this statement? Ans: Portia says this.
   B) What does sceptre stand for? Ans: Scepter stands for temporal or earthly power.
  - C) Why is the sceptre said to possess temporal power?
  - O) WINY IS THE SCEPTIE SAID TO POSSESS TEMPORAL POWER? Ans: Because the power of scentre is an attribute of awa and for

Ans: Because the power of sceptre is an attribute of awe and fear of kings.

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

3)	) And the earthly power doth then show likest God's When mercy seasons justice	
,	A) What is that earthly power referred here?	
Ans: The power of kings that is the power of sceptre is referred as the earthlypo		
	B) When does the earthly power look like Gog's power?	
	Ans: The earthly power becomes a divine or Godly power when mercy tempers justice	
	C) Whose power is attributed as God's power? Ans- King's power.	
Λ	"It droppoth as the gentle rain from beaven Upon the place beneath	

- 4. "It droppeth as the gentle rain from heaven.Upon the place beneath.
  a. What is compared to the gentle rain from heaven? Ans.: Mercy
  b. Why does the speaker feel it is twice blest? Ans.: According to the speaker, the person who shows mercy and the personwho receives mercy is also blest
  C. What is the figure of speech used in the line? Ans -Simile
- 5. His sceptre shows the force of temporal power, The attribute to awe and majesty. a. How does the sceptre show temporal power? Ans.: The sceptre creates fear among people. b. In contrast, what quality does mercy stand for? Ans.: Mercy stands for divine quality and it flows from the heart. C. Whose example is given in the poem to temporal power? Ans - King
- 6. Its mightiest in the mightiest it becomes the throned monarch better than the crow a. Who is mighty? Ans.: Mercy b. How is it mighty? Ans.: Quality of Mercy is more powerful than all the symbols of power on earth.
  - C. When does throned monarch better than the crown?
  - Ans : When King Seasons Justice with Mercy

# 7. It is an attribute to God himself.

- a. What is this attribute? Ans.: Quality of Mercy
- b. Why is it a quality of God? Ans.:Godisallmerciful and anyone on earth who preaches it is like God. C. When it is an attribute to god himself?

Ans : When King seasons Justice with Mercy

## 8. It blesseth him that gives, and him that takes

a. How does it bless the one who gives?

Ans.: The giver gets the blessing as he has helped the other person.

b. How does it bless the one who takes? Ans.: The taker is blest because he is forgiven c) Who blessed twice? Ans: The mercy blessed twice

## The summary of the poem :

The Quality of mercy is not forced. It drops down from heaven as a gentle rain upon the earth. It's doubly blessed. It blesses both the giver and the receiver. It's most powerful when granted by those who hold power over others. It's more important to a monarch than his crown. His sceptre shows the level of his temporal power - the symbol of awe and majesty in which lies the source of the dread and fear that kings command. But mercy is above that sceptered power. It's enthroned in the hearts of kings. It is an attribute of God himself. And earthly power most closely resembles God's power when justice., is guided by mercy.

- Q. How does the speaker in the court try to convince Shylock that mercy istwice blessed and is a divine quality? oR What does Portia tell Shylock about the quality of Mercy?
- Ans. Portia, one of the main characters in the play 'The Merchant of Venice', argues why mercy is the greatest virtue of all. Portia compares mercy to the gentle rain that falls from heaven to the ground. Mercy blesses both the giver and the receiver. It is the most powerful of all virtues and enhances the glory of a king more than his crown. The sceptre of a monarch is a symbol of worldly power. It controls people through fear. The power of the sceptre mercy is divine and has its seat in theheart. The power of a man who shows mercy along with justice would be God likein nature.

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

# **GENTLEMAN OF RIO EN MEDIO**

Multiple type questions :

1)	It took months of negotiation to come	to an understand	ling with the old man.
	This shows that the old man was		
	a) understanding b) quick	<u>c) unhurried</u>	d) witty
2)	The old man came to the office to		
	a) meet the lawyer b) meet the Americ		
	c) sign the sale deed d) argue that he wa	as the owner of the	land
3)	The old man was accompanied by		
	a) his friends b) parents c) people		
4)	Behind him walked one of his "innumer		ord "innumerable kin"
	means that the old man had a number of		
	a) children b) trees in his orch	ard <u>c. relatives</u>	d. followers
5)	The old man in his coat looked like		
		c. an America	
6)	The old man removed his hat gloves sl	owly and careful	ly. This action is com-
	pared to		
	a.Hero b. an old man		d. Charlie Chaplin.
7)	The young man who accompanied the		
-	a. lotus <u>b. gazelle</u>	c. fish	d. clear sky
8)	The old man carried a cane which was	•	
	a. stick	b. steel rod	
•	c. a skeleton of a worn-out umbrella	d. stylish stick	
9)	The old man wore a coat named		
	a. Farmer's coat b. Spanish coat		
10)	Which of the lines from the text that su		
	a. he loved trees	b. he planted tre	
44	c. He tilled the same land they had tille		
11)	How did the old man greet the people v		•
	a. saluted them	b. removed his h	
40)	c. shook hands allof them	d. bowed to all	
12)	The old man removed his hat and glow		
	a. he was afraid that they would be torn.		-
12)	c. he was old and weak In the first meeting of the old man and		Il who assembled
13)		the Americans, I	ney talked about rain
	and the old man's large family.lt was a. to mock his large family	b. a custom of tl	ha Amaricana
	c. to prepare every one for the main ta		ne Americans
	d. to make everyone know that it had not r		
11)	The old man had agreed to sell house		
14)	a. twelve hundred dollars		
15)	The story teller respected the old man	hy saving	
13)	a. good morning <u>b.Don Anselmo</u>	c. Hello	d. Sir Anselmo
	a. good morning <b><u>b.bon Anseinio</u></b>	C. HEIIO	
Carrie	nlate Solution (Questions & American)	0.01	
Com	plete Solution (Questions & Answers) 22	551	LC - ENGLISH - <b>2018</b>

16)	According to the engineer the old man a. four acres b. eight hectares	owned the land <u>c. more than eight acres</u>
	d. eight acres exactly	
17)	Don Anselmo took only 12 hundred doll	lars for the land finally because
-	a. the story teller failed to convince Don Anselm	no to take more money than what had agreed
	b.Don Anselmo was a man of principles.	<u>.</u>
	c. It cost more than that amount	d. he sold only the land ,not the trees
18)	It took a week to arrange another meeti	
	a. deliberately delayed b. was slow	c. was not in the station d. was ill
19)	Don Anselmo says, "The Americans are	good people".Because he wanted to_
	a. appreciate them .	b mock at them
	<u>c. express his sincere feelings</u>	d. flatter them
20)	Why did the old man sell his house and	land to the Americans? because
	a. the Americans were good people	b. he needed money
	c. he did not like the land	d. his house was old
21)	Don Anselmo sold his land but he didn'	
		he orchard d. fruits in the orchard
22)	The children of Reo en Medio were Dor	
	a. Sobrinos and nietos. b. grandchildr	en c. Friends d. share holders
23)	Don Anselmo inherited the house from	
/		
-	a. his granny b. relatives	c. his mother <u>d. his father</u>
-	a. his granny b. relatives According to Don Anselmo, The real ov	vners of the trees were
-	a. his grannyb. relativesAccording to Don Anselmo, The real overa) Don Anselmo himselfb) the America	vners of the trees were ans
24)	a. his grannyb. relativesAccording to Don Anselmo, The real over a) Don Anselmo himselfb) the Americ b) the Americ d) thechildreec)The story tellerd) thechildree	vners of the trees were ans en of Rio en Medio
24)	a. his grannyb. relativesAccording to Don Anselmo, The real ora) Don Anselmo himselfb) the Americc)The story tellerd) thechildreDon Anselmo did not sell trees.Because	vners of the trees were ans en of Rio en Medio e
24)	a. his grannyb. relativesAccording to Don Anselmo, The real ora) Don Anselmo himselfb) the Americc)The story tellerd) thechildreeDon Anselmo did not sell trees.Becausea. Trees were like children to himb. They were	vners of the trees were ans <u>en of Rio en Medio</u> e vere grown for the children of next generation
24)	a. his grannyb. relativesAccording to Don Anselmo, The real ora) Don Anselmo himselfb) the Americc)The story tellerd) thechildreeDon Anselmo did not sell trees.Becausea. Trees were like children to himb. They werec. He had grown them in memory for event	vners of the trees were ans en of Rio en Medio e vere grown for the children of next generation ery child birth
24) 25.	a. his grannyb. relativesAccording to Don Anselmo, The real ora) Don Anselmo himselfb) the Americc)The story tellerd) thechildreDon Anselmo did not sell trees.Becausea. Trees were like children to himb. They werec. He had grown them in memory for eventd. He wanted his surroundings tobe green	vners of the trees were ans en of Rio en Medio e vere grown for the children of next generation ery child birth
24) 25.	a. his grannyb. relativesAccording to Don Anselmo, The real over a) Don Anselmo himselfb) the Americ b) the Americ c) The story tellerb) the story tellerd) thechildreeDon Anselmo did not sell trees.Because a. Trees were like children to him b. They were c. He had grown them in memory for even d. He wanted his surroundings tobe green Legally trees should belong to	vners of the trees were ans an of Rio en Medio e vere grown for the children of next generation ery child birth
24) 25. 26.	a. his grannyb. relativesAccording to Don Anselmo, The real ora) Don Anselmo himselfb) the Americc)The story tellerd) thechildreeDon Anselmo did not sell trees.Becausea. Trees were like children to himb. They werec. He had grown them in memory for eventd. He wanted his surroundings tobe greenLegally trees should belong toa. Don Anselmob.the Americansc. the observation	vners of the trees were ans en of Rio en Medio e vere grown for the children of next generation ery child birth children of Rio en Medio d. The story teller
24) 25. 26.	a. his grannyb. relativesAccording to Don Anselmo, The real ora) Don Anselmo himselfb) the Americc)The story tellerd) thechildreDon Anselmo did not sell trees.Becausea. Trees were like children to himb. They werec. He had grown them in memory for eventd. He wanted his surroundings tobe greenLegally trees should belong toa. Don Anselmob. the Americansc. the of the did Don Anselmo do as he left the	vners of the trees were ans en of Rio en Medio e vere grown for the children of next generation ery child birth children of Rio en Medio d. The story teller
24) 25. 26.	a. his granny b. relatives According to Don Anselmo, The real over a) Don Anselmo himself b) the America c)The story teller <u>d) thechildree</u> Don Anselmo did not sell trees.Because a. Trees were like children to him b.They we <u>c. He had grown them in memory for ever</u> d. He wanted his surroundings tobe green Legally trees should belong to a. Don Anselmo <u>b.the Americans</u> c. the co What did Don Anselmo do as he left the <u>a. shook hands all around</u>	vners of the trees were ans en of Rio en Medio e vere grown for the children of next generation ery child birth children of Rio en Medio d. The story teller place with money?He b.said goodbye
<ul><li>24)</li><li>25.</li><li>26.</li><li>27.</li></ul>	a. his grannyb. relativesAccording to Don Anselmo, The real ora) Don Anselmo himselfb) the Americc)The story tellerd) thechildreeDon Anselmo did not sell trees.Becausea. Trees were like children to himb. They werec. He had grown them in memory for eventd. He wanted his surroundings tobe greenLegally trees should belong toa. Don Anselmob. the Americansc. the did Don Anselmo do as he left thea. shook hands all aroundc. thanked them for purchasing his land	vners of the trees were ans en of Rio en Medio e vere grown for the children of next generation ery child birth children of Rio en Medio d. The story teller place with money?He b.said goodbye d.offered them dinner
<ul><li>24)</li><li>25.</li><li>26.</li><li>27.</li></ul>	<ul> <li>a. his granny</li> <li>b. relatives</li> <li>According to Don Anselmo, The real over a descent of the story teller</li> <li>b) the American descent of the story teller</li> <li>c) The story teller</li> <li>d) the children of the transformation of the story teller</li> <li>d) the children of the story teller</li> <li>a. Trees were like children to him b. They were descent of the story of the st</li></ul>	vners of the trees were ans en of Rio en Medio e vere grown for the children of next generation ery child birth children of Rio en Medio d. The story teller place with money?He b.said goodbye d.offered them dinner
<ul><li>24)</li><li>25.</li><li>26.</li><li>27.</li></ul>	a. his granny b. relatives According to Don Anselmo, The real over a) Don Anselmo himself b) the America c)The story teller <u>d) thechildres</u> Don Anselmo did not sell trees.Because a. Trees were like children to him b.They were c. He had grown them in memory for ever d. He wanted his surroundings tobe green Legally trees should belong to a. Don Anselmo <u>b.the Americans</u> c. the co What did Don Anselmo do as he left the <u>a. shook hands all around</u> c. thanked them for purchasing his land The Gentle man Don Anselmo was very <u>A. children</u> B. money	vners of the trees were         ans         en of Rio en Medio         e         vere grown for the children of next generation         ery child birth         children of Rio en Medio d. The story teller         place with money?He         b.said goodbye         d.offered them dinner         fond of         C. the land       D. dress
<ul><li>24)</li><li>25.</li><li>26.</li><li>27.</li></ul>	<ul> <li>a. his granny</li> <li>b. relatives</li> <li>According to Don Anselmo, The real over a descent of the story teller</li> <li>b) the American descent of the story teller</li> <li>c) The story teller</li> <li>d) the children of the transformation of the story teller</li> <li>d) the children of the story teller</li> <li>a. Trees were like children to him b. They were descent of the story of the st</li></ul>	vners of the trees were         ans         en of Rio en Medio         e         vere grown for the children of next generation         ery child birth         children of Rio en Medio d. The story teller         place with money?He         b.said goodbye         d.offered them dinner         fond of         C. the land       D. dress
<ul> <li>24)</li> <li>25.</li> <li>26.</li> <li>27.</li> <li>28.</li> </ul>	a. his granny b. relatives According to Don Anselmo, The real over a) Don Anselmo himself b) the America c)The story teller <u>d) thechildres</u> Don Anselmo did not sell trees.Because a. Trees were like children to him b.They were c. He had grown them in memory for ever d. He wanted his surroundings tobe green Legally trees should belong to a. Don Anselmo <u>b.the Americans</u> c. the co What did Don Anselmo do as he left the <u>a. shook hands all around</u> c. thanked them for purchasing his land The Gentle man Don Anselmo was very <u>A. children</u> B. money	vners of the trees were         ans         en of Rio en Medio         e         vere grown for the children of next generation         ery child birth         children of Rio en Medio d. The story teller         place with money?He         b.said goodbye         d.offered them dinner         fond of         C. the land       D. dress
<ul> <li>24)</li> <li>25.</li> <li>26.</li> <li>27.</li> <li>28.</li> <li>II.</li> <li>1.</li> </ul>	a. his granny b. relatives According to Don Anselmo, The real ov a) Don Anselmo himself b) the Americ c)The story teller <u>d) thechildre</u> Don Anselmo did not sell trees.Because a. Trees were like children to him b.They w <u>c. He had grown them in memory for ev</u> d. He wanted his surroundings tobe green Legally trees should belong to a. Don Anselmo <u>b.the Americans</u> c. the c What did Don Anselmo do as he left the <u>a. shook hands all around</u> c. thanked them for purchasing his land The Gentle man Don Anselmo was very <u>A. children</u> B. money Answer the following questions in two - Describe the old man's property. s. The old man's house was small, wretched	<pre>vners of the trees were ans en of Rio en Medio e vere grown for the children of next generation ery child birth children of Rio en Medio d. The story teller b,said goodbye d.offered them dinner fond of C. the land D. dress - three sentences each: but quaint. His orchard was gnarled and</pre>
<ul> <li>24)</li> <li>25.</li> <li>26.</li> <li>27.</li> <li>28.</li> <li>II.</li> <li>1.</li> </ul>	a. his grannyb. relativesAccording to Don Anselmo, The real ora) Don Anselmo himselfb) the Americc)The story tellerd) thechildreDon Anselmo did not sell trees.Becausea. Trees were like children to himb. They wc. He had grown them in memory for evd. He wanted his surroundings tobe greenLegally trees should belong toa. Don Anselmo b.the Americansc. the c. the cWhat did Don Anselmo do as he left thea. shook hands all aroundc. thanked them for purchasing his landThe Gentle man Don Anselmo was veryA. childrenB. moneyAnswer the following questions in two for the old man's property.	vners of the trees were         ans         en of Rio en Medio         e         vere grown for the children of next generation         ery child birth         children of Rio en Medio d. The story teller         place with money?He         b.said goodbye         d.offered them dinner         of fond of         C. the land       D. dress         - three sentences each:         but quaint. His orchard was gnarled and

# 2. Where did Don Anselmo live? What work did he do?

- Ans. Don Anselmo lived in a small, quaint house in Rio en Medio. He tilled the land that was inherited to him from his ancestors.
- 3. Explain briefly the appearance and manners of Don Anselmo?
- Ans. Don Anselmo wore an old, green faded coat. His gloves too were old and torn and his finger tips showed through them and carried a cane which was the skeleton of a worn out umbrella. when he entered the room he bowed to all and slowly removed his hat and gloves.

# 4. How did the old man greet the people who had been waiting for him?

- Ans. The old man bowed to all of them in the room. He then removed his hat and gloves, slowly and carefully.
- 5. What did the Americans discover after the survey?
- Ans. After the survey, the Americans discovered that Don Anselmo owns more than eight acres of land which extends across the river.
- 6. The story teller offered the old man almost the double of what he had quoted earlier. Why?
- Ans. The story teller offered the old man almost the double of what he had quoted earlier because he discovered that Don Anselmo owns more than eight acres of land which extends across the river.
- 7. What was the reaction of the old man to the story teller's offer?
- Ans. The old man hung his head for a moment in thought, stood up and stared at the story teller's offer.
- 8. After the survey the Americans offered double the quoted price for the old man's land. why?
- Ans. The Americans were good people and when they found that Don Anselmo owned more than eight acres of !and, they offered to pay double the price they had quoted earlier.
- 9. Why did the story teller fail to convince Don Anselmo to accept more money?
- Ans. The story teller failed to convince Don Anselmo to accept more money because Don Anselmo felt that he was insulted by the offer.
- 10. Why do you think the Americans wanted to buy Don Anselmo's land?
- Ans. The little creek ran through the land of Don Anselmo. His orchard was gnarled and beautiful. So, to lead a happy and peaceful life. The Americans wanted to buy Don Anselmo's land
- 11. Why did the story teller say that Americans 'bueana gente'?
- Ans. The story teller said that the Americans are bueana gentla because they didn't want to cheat Don Anselmo and they were willing to pay Don Anselmo twice the money for his land
- 12. How was the problem of ownership was resolved by the Americans?
- Ans. The Americans bought the tree in the orchard from the descendents of Don Anselmo. It took a long time because they purchased from each individual of Rio enMedio.

# 13. Why did the Americans want to buy Don Anselmo's land?

Ans: Don Anselmo's land had a good water source as the little creek ran through the land. His orchard was beautiful and his house was quaint.

# 14. Why did the Americans complain the story teller on the old man?

Ans. The Americans complained the story teller that, The children of the village were running around the land, playing in the orchard, putting fences around their play area, plucking the flowers from the trees, laughing whenever they were spoken they laughed at the Americans and replied in Spanish. so they could not enjoy their property.

# 15. How do you say that Don Anselmo was generous?

Ans. Don Anselmo was generous. Because he was a man of principles he refused to take the extra money offered by the Americans for his land.he dicided to sell the land for the price he had quoted earlier.

# 16. Why do you think Don Anselmo did not sell the trees in the Orchard?

Ans. Don Anselmo planted a tree for memory of every birth of child so the trees in the Orchard belongs to the children of Rio-en-Medio. Hence Don Anselmo could sell only the Orchard but not the trees in the Orchard.

# Extract :

# "It took months of negotiation to come to an understanding with the old man" a) Who is the old men referred here?

Ans- Don Anselmo

B) What was the negotiation about?

Ans.: The negotiation was about the selling of the old man's land.

c. Why do you think it took months to come to an understanding?

Ans.: It took months to come to an understanding because the old man was in no hurry to sell

# 2. "We have made a discovery"

a) Who is we referred here? Ans- Americans

b. What did they discover?

Ans.: They discovered that Don Anselmo owns more than eight acres of land c. What was the result of the discovery?

Ans.: As a result, they offered Don Anselmo double the price of what they had quoted earlier

# 3. "These Americans are Buena gente"

a. What is the meaning of Buena gente according to the context? Ans.: Buena gente means good people.

b. Why did the speaker called Americans Buena gente?

Ans.: The speaker called Americans Buena gente because after the survey, they did not cheat Don Anselmo and were ready to pay twice the money they had quoted earlier for the additional land.

C) Who is the speaker? Ans : Narrator

4. "I do not like to have you speak to me in that manner"

a. who is the speaker? Ans - Don Anselmo

b. What is the mood of the speaker?

Ans.: The speaker felt that he was being insulted.

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

c. What made him react so?

Ans.: He said these words when the Americans offered him twice the money they had quoted earlier for his land.

# 5. "I have agreed to sell my house and land for twelve hundred dollars and that is the price"

a. When did the speaker say this?

Ans.: The old man said this when the Americans offered him double the pricethat had been quoted earlier for his land.

b. What does this statement tell about the speaker?

Ans.: This statement tells that the speaker was not greedy and he was a man of principles. C. Why did speaker agree to sell the land to Americans?

Ans. They were Good People

# 6. "I did not sell them the trees in the Orchard".

a. Why didn't he sell the trees in the orchard?

Ans.: According to Don Anselmo he didn't sell the trees because the trees belong to the children of Rio-en-Medio .:

b. How did Don Anselmo defend his statement?

Ans.: Don Anselmo defended that when a child was born in the village, a tree was planted and so the trees belonged to the children of the village.

C. Was Don Anselmo right in saying this? Ans :Yes.

# 7) "He lived up in Rio en Medio where his ancestors lived.He tilled the same land they had tilled"

A) Who does "he" and "they" refer to?

Ans: "He" refers to the old man, Anselmo. "They" refers to His ancestors.

B) What does the statement convey?

Ans: The statement conveys that Anselmo was the oldest man in the village, Rio en Medio.

C . What was the profession of the Old man?

Ans- Former

# 8. "The trees in that Orchard are not mine".

a. According to Don Anselmo, who did the trees belong to?

Ans.: the tree belonged to the children of Rio-en-Medio.

b. Why did he feel so?

Ans.: He felt so because every time a child was born in the village, he hadplanted a tree for that child.

C. When did speaker make the statement?

Ans- When Americans complained about the children's disturbances in the orchard 9 "They are good people and they are willing to pay you for the additional land as

well.You will get almost twice as much" A) Who are the good people referred here?

Ans: The Americans are referred to as good people.

B) Why are they offering twice the amount?

Ans: The Americans found that Anselmo owned more than eight acres of land almost double of what was mentioned in the deed.

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

26

C) Did the owner accept double amount?

Ans- No, he didn't accept

11) "I know these Americans are good people, and that is why I have agreed to sell to them, but I do not care to be insulted"

A) Who is the speaker? and why does he call them good people?

Ans: Don Anselmo is the speaker and he calls the Americans good people as he was a gentle man.

B) What did he sell them and how much did he offer?

Ans: The old man Anselmo sold them his house and land for twelve hundred dollars. C) Why did he feel insulted? Who insulted him?

Ans: The author and the Americans offered twice the amount as in the deed .But Anselmo was an honest and a gentleman. He did not want more than the deed amount. So he felt insulted.

# 13) "I argued with him but it was useless."

A) Who argued with whom?

Ans: the author argued with the old man Don Anselmo.

B) What was argued with him?

Ans: He argued with him to take the extra amount for the extra land possessed by Anselmo. C) What was the result?

Ans: he put signature to the deed and collected the money what he had quoted earlier 14) "One day they came back to the office to complain. The children of the village

# were over running their property"

A) Who complained to the office?

Ans: The Americans complained to the office.

B) What was their complaint?

Ans. Their complaint was that the Children of Rio en Medio were over running their property.

C) What is the property referred here?

Ans: The property refers to the land purchased by the Americans.

15) "They are good people and want to be your good neighbours always.
A) Who spoke these words? Who are called good people here?
Ans: The author called the Americans good people.
B) Who is he speaking to? Why does he speak so?
Ans: He is speaking to Anselmo. Because he wants Anselmo to avoid the children of Rio en Medio over running into their orchard.
C) Who are the neighbours referred here?
Ans: The Americans

# Answer the following in 8-10 sentences :

# 1. Don Anselmo and the Americans were generous in their own ways. Explain.

Ans. The Americans informed Don Anselmo that after survey, they found that he owns more than eight acres and were willing to pay double the agreed amount. This shows that the Americans were generous. Don Anselmo was a man of principle and refused to take extra amount. It was his generosity. the Americans showed their gen-

27

erosity in one wore way. When old man told that trees belonged to children , they bought the trees individually from the villagers.

- 2. At last, the problem of ownership was resolved, But it took a long time. What might be the reason for it.
- Ans. After buying the property from Don Anselmo by the Americans the children of Rio en Medio, began to overrun the Orchard and spend most of their time there. This was brought to the notice of Don Anselmo and he was asked to stop the children. Don Anselmo claimed that he had sold the land to them but not the trees. He had planted a tree for each child born in the village and the trees belonged to the children, not to him. The owners were left with no choice. They had to buy the trees individually from the villages and this took a long time.
- 3. Don Anselmo's reaction to the offer of more money was not expected. Justify this statement.
- Ans. Don Anselmo agreed to sell his land for twelve hundred dollars. After the survey the Americans found that the land was more than 8 acres and they were willing to offer twice the amount for the extra land. The old man could have been happy but as he heard this the old man hung his head for a moment and stared at the story teller. He felt that he was being insulted. He told them that he had agreed to sell his property for twelve hundred dollars to the Americans because they are good and stuck to his words. This reaction of the old man is truly unexpected.
- 4. "I did not sell the trees because I could not, they are not mine". How did the old man support this statement?
- Ans.: The old man explained that he was the oldest person in the village. Almost everyone there was related to him and all the children of Rio en Medio were his neices and nephews. He planted a tree for every child that was born in the village. So the trees in the Orchard belonged to the children. Hence there was no way he could sell the trees along with the land.



# **OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS :**

1)	The speaker uses the phrase "I wait" in the poem to show her			ow her
	A.disgust	B. annoyance	C.patience	D.anger
2)	The earth stares with			
	<u>A. car lot eyes</u>	B.dark eyes	C.angry eyes	D. merciful eyes
3.	Then 'someone tickles me' says the earth refer to			
	A. mining of the earth B. digging the earth for selfish activities			S
	C. Joking the earth	D.the farmers p	loughing the earth.	
4)	Man has fenced between the countries. But the earth feels at the fence			
	betweenthe countries as			
	A. a beautiful garland to her B. Protection to her property			
	C. mischief of man	<u>D.chainlir</u>	ik necklace choking	<u>her</u>

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

28

5.	The line from the poem "I am the land" which expresses the self assertion of the earth is			
	A. I am the land, I wai	t	B.You come with	guns
	C. you can put a fer	nce around the earth	<u>h</u> D. I lie patient	
6.	Who does 'you' refe	er to in the poem 'I r	n The Land'?	
	A. people	B. farmers	C.soldiers	D.living beings
7.	"chain link necklace	e chokes me"- The	figure of speech e	employed here is
	A. personification	B.metaphor	C. simile	D.synecdoche
8.	"muddy holes" refe	rs to		
	A.virtual holes in th	<u>eland</u>	B. intention of the	
	C.commotion created	by the reader	D.holes full of mu	d
9.	In the poem I am Th	e Land 'the line' 'ca	ar lot eyes' refer to	)
	A. ploughing of the ea	irth	B. light reflected b	by the earth
	C. Moon light reflecte	d by the earth		
	D. Perception as if t	<u>he earth were starin</u>	gwith the lights of	the car parked on it
10.	The speaker in the	poem 'I am the Land	d' is	
	A. The sun	B.The moon	C.A woman	D.The earth
ANSWER IN 2-3 SENTENCE EACH :				
1.	Wait is repeated in 5 times In the poem. What quality of speaker is highlighted with the repetitions?			
Ans	Ans. Human beings are troubling the earth. They say that they own the lands proclaim that			

- Ans. Human beings are troubling the earth. They say that they own the lands proclaim that the land is theirs. Mother earth has an ocean of patience and bears allthe cruelty committed by man.
- 2. Bring out the contrast between the speaker and the reader in the poem.
- Ans. The speaker in the poem is land. It says that it is always patient and bears all that is done to it. The reader uses the land in many ways. He cuts trees and even fights for
- 3. What are the activities which go on over land?
- Ans. Man buys land, digs land and plants trees, grows fruit on it. Children dance and play on land. Man also fences and makes boundaries over the land
- 4. You cannot put a fence, Around the planet Earth. is this a tone of weakness or selfassertion? Give reason for your answer.
- Ans. It is a tone of self assertion. The poet mocks at those who are greedy. They involve in wars to acquire more land. The earth has given everything to us. Whatever injustice we are doing, the earth bears everything patiently. We cannot put a fence around the mother earth
- 5. How is the action of soldiers affect the earth?
- Ans the soldiers come with guns and shoot from their country to their enemy country. They put fence between the countries. This affect the earth with the choking. The fence appear to be the choking necklace

29

# Extracts :

<ol> <li>"You come with guns a chain link necklace chokes me now."</li> <li>A) Who came with guns?</li> </ol>
Ans: The soldiers came with guns to fight against their enemies. B) Who is choked here?
Ans : The earth is choked by the war mongers. C) How do we chock the earth?
Ans-The fence between the nations is like a necklace around the neck of the earth. Itchoked the earth
<ul><li>2. "YOU CANNOT PUT A FENCE AROUND THE PLANET EARTH"</li><li>A) Who cannot put fence around the earth?</li></ul>
Ans: People cannot put fence around the earth. B) What is the mood of the speaker expressed here?
Ans; The earth is in a mood of self assertion c) Why does it feel so?
Ans.: The speaker mocks at the people who wage wars and build fences on theland to divide nations
<ul><li>3. "You say you own me,l wait"</li><li>A) Who does 'You' and 'l 'refer to?</li></ul>
Ans: you refers to people and I refers to land B) What is owned here?
Ans: Earth is owned here. c) Why does the earth wait?
Ans:The earth has the quality of patience.so it waits <b>4. "Then some tickles me plant lifefruits"</b>
a). What does tickle mean in the context?
Ans : plough the land b. What is the mood of the speaker in the statement?
Ans- the mother earth wait patiently when the people plough the land, plant trees and grows fruits
c. Who does the word 'some' refer to here? Ans: people who own earth.
Q. Write the summary of the poem –"I am the land" OR
How does the poet describe that the earth has an ocean of patience in the
poem, -"I am the land" Ans. In the poem, I am the land the poet depicts the mother earth as the speaker. Mother earth tells that she waits with patience when people claim that the land belongs to them. They occupy the land, plough, plant trees, grow fruits and grass. The children dance and play on the land. The land bears everything without a complaint. The soldiers come with guns fighting for the land. People build fences on the land to divide nations which suffocates like chains in her neck. But mother earth mocks at the

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

people's behavior with a tone of self assertion.

30

# DR. B. R. AMBEDKAR



- 1. Ambedkar spent most of his life by reading books
- 2. What was the major influence on Ambedkar to look condition of depressed class? The 14th amendment of USA
- 3. The 14<sup>th</sup> amendment of American constitution helped its black people **to get freedom**
- 4. After returned to india Ambedkar was influence by Mahatma Phule
- 5. Mooknaya, Bahishakrit Bharat and Samata were News paper
- 6. Gandhiji termed the depressed classes **as Harijans**
- 7. Though Dr.Ambedkar was made the chairman of drafting committee **because of Indian Congress' farsighted objective and leadership**
- 8. The first law minister of independent india was....Dr. B R Ambedkar
- 9. The British Rulers exaggerated caste distinction and divided people of India by divide and Rule
- 10. Ambedkar's dream of getting social equality will be fulfilled when social discrimination is completely eliminated from our society.
- 11. Nehru described Ambedkar as a symbol of Revolt
- 12. According to Bhudda Indian caste systems are divided between **the people of noble** and ignoble
- 13. Gandhiji worked to repudiate caste system by reminding higher caste duties towards lower caste.
- 14. Abmedkar tried to repudiate caste system by reminding of their right to equality with higher caste.
- 15. The quality of members of congress that made Ambedkar as the chairman of drafting committee was **their farsighted objective and leadership**

# ANSWER IN 2-3 SENTENCE :

# 1. Ambedkar had a great thirst for books when he was a student. Explain.

- Ans. Throughout his life Dr. Ambedkar was a voracious reader. He had an insatiable thirst for books. He bought books by curtailing his daily needs. In New York he purchased about 2,000 books and that they to be sent to India in 32 boxes.
- 2. How did the fourteenth amendment to the US Constitution and Mahatma Phule influence on Ambedkar?
- Ans. While in U.S.A. Ambedkar was drawn to the fourteenth amendment of the constitution of the U.S.A. which gave freedom to the Black Americans. He was at once the parallel of the situation for the depressed classes in India. On returning India he was greatly influenced by the life and work of Mahatma Phule, the votary of a classless society and women's upliftment. This made him to devote all his time and talents for the betterment of his under privileged brethren.

# 3. There were great luminaries on the Drafting Committee Dr. Ambedkar is remembered as the pilot. Give reasons.

- Ans. Dr. Ambedkar was the chairman of the drafting committee. He was tactful, frank and had utmost patience. He explained clearly the meaning and scope of the different provisions of the Draft constitution. He explained the most complicated legal concepts which could be easily understood even by a layman.
- 4. Write a short note on Dr. Ambedkar's idea/perception of the three pillars of state.
- Ans. Dr. Ambedkar had a clear idea about mutuality of the legislature, the executive and the judiciary. He said that the jurisdiction of each should be clear and untrammeled. He had a sense of the importance of the sole of citizens.
- 5. What are the significant observations of Dr. Ambedkar on the constitution?
- Ans. The constitution is a fundamental document which defines the position and power of the three organs of the state the executive, the judiciary and the legislature. It also defines the powers of the executive and legislature as against the citizens. The other purpose of constitution to limit their authority to avoid tyranny and oppression by the legislature and the executive.
- 6. How did Dr. Ambedkar and Mahatma Gandhi try to wipe out caste discrimination from India?
- Ans. Gandhiji reminded the higher castes their duty towards the depressed classes. Babasaheb Ambedkar did the same by reminding them of their inherent rights to equality with the higher and more powerful castes. One stressed the duties, the other stressed the rights.
- 7. What made Dr. Ambedkar describe the methods of civil disobedience, Noncooperation and Satyagraha as the "Grammar of Anarchy"?
- Ans. According to Ambedkar, methods of civil disobedience non-cooperation and Satyagraha are necessary in a state which is ruled by foreigners. But in a democratic country, these methods should not be used. If used there would be loss of lives and public property
- 8. Dr.Ambedkar was not in the congress party. Yet he was made the chairman of drafting committee?
- Ans: Ambedkar was a good social philosopher and dignity of human beings. He made effective contribution to the debates in the assembly on the variety of subjects; his flair for legislative work impressed everyone in the whole nation. Indian Congress' farsighted and objective leadership selected him as chairman.

# 9. Constitution is a fundamental document to the ruler and ruled. How?

Ans. It defines the position and power of three organs of state-the executive, legislative and judiciary. it also provide the limit their authority to avoid tyranny and oppression by the legislature and the Executive.

# 10. Nehru chose Ambedkar as law minister for three reasons. What are they?

Ans. Nehru chose Ambedkar as Law minister of India for his skills in the field of law and legislation, for his vision of social justice which was sought to be infused into the new Indian policy. Thirdly his own campaigns against social injustice.

32

# 11. What were the opinion of Bhudda and Avvai regarding the caste division?

Ans. Bhudda said 'caste division of india are the divisions between those who are noble and wholesome and those who are ignoble and unwholesome. Avvai said there were only two caste in the world, namely charitable who give are superior and misers who don't give are inferior.

# **EXTRACTS** :

'He had an insatiable thrist for books' a.Whi is the pronoun 'he' refered to? Ans: Dr. B R Ambedkar b.How can You say that he had an insatiable thrist for books? Ans: by curtailing his daily needs he bought many books. c. What does 'insatiabler' in the context? Ans:to cut down 'He was a varacious reader' 2. a.Who does 'He' refer to? Ans: Dr. B R Ambedkar b.How long was he a veracious reader? Ans: He was a varacious reader throug out his life. c. What does varacious mean? Ans: very eager for knowladge He bought many books at the second round table conference 3 a. Who bought many books? Ans: Dr. B R Ambedkar b. Where was he when he bought many books? Ans: He was in Landon c. What does it tell about the person? Ans: He was a varacious reader Or found of reading books Dr. Ambedkar had a clear perception of the mutuality of the three pillars of the state. 4. a.Which are the three pillars of the state? Ans:Legistature, the executive, the judiciary b.How according Ambedkar the juridiction of the state should be? Ans: It should be clear and untrammed c.What does 'perception' mean in the context? Ans: Ability to see, here and understand 'The costitution is a fundamental decision' 5. a.What does the constitution defene? Ans: The constitution defines the position and power of three pillars i.e. legislature, executive, judiciary b.What is the purpose of the costitution? Ans: the purpose is not only to creat organization and but also limit their authority. c.Who was the chairman of the drafting comittee of the constitution? Ans: Dr.B R Ambedkar

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

6.	He once described the methods of civil satyagraha as the 'grammar of anarchy'. a. Who described the methods? Ans:Dr.B R Ambedkar b. When does these methods assums imp	ortance?
	Ans: it assums importance in a strugle in fo c.Why these methods are called as 'framm Ans: If these methods are used in democr public proparty	nar of anarchy'?
7.	'There are only two castes in the world,	s a Tamil Poetess e and miser
	Ans : Yes, Charitable is superior because t infirior because they dont give anything	
8.	The British rulers exaggerated the cast	e distinctions and divided the people
	of india' a.What policy did British use to divide india	?
	Ans: Divide and rule	
	b.Why did they adopt this policy? Ans:They wanted to have control over india	ins
	c.What is the exaggerate mean?	
0	Ans: to describe in a larger or greater man	
9.	Who could have dreamt that one born to not only a law minister but a law maker	
	a Who reffere to as a law minister?	Ans: Dr. B R Ambedkar
	b.Who chose him to be a law minister?	
	c. Why is he recognised as a law minister?	
10	the constitution as the chairman, he was sk 'They bought about variable revolution	•
10.	a. Who are they?	Ans:Gandiji and Ambadkar
	b.What 'revolution' is referred to here?	
	c. How did they bring about the revolution?	•
11	He described Babasaheb as a symbol of	
	<ul><li>a. Who described ?</li><li>b. When and Where was statement made?</li></ul>	Ans: Jawaharlal Nehru
	Ans:When Ambedkar passed away in the L	
	c.Why do you think the statement was mad	de?
40	Ans: Ambedkar fought againest the descrimina	ation and social injustice through out his life.
12	He raised brick by brick. a. Who raised brick by brick?	Ans: Dr. B R Ambedkar
	b.What does brick by brick mean?	Ans: step by step or slowly
	c. What was raised in the context?"	Ans:fundamental rights
Com	plete Solution (Questions & Answers) 34	SSLC - ENGLISH - <b>2018</b>

# His flair for legislative work became evident to the nation a.Whose falir became evident? b.When did it become evident? Ans: When he was made the chairman of drafting committee c.pick out the word from the statement which means 'a natural ability to do something well.

# **ANSWER IN PARAGRAPH :**

- 1. How did 14<sup>th</sup> amendment of constitution of USA influence on Ambedkar? OR How was Ambedkar influenced by 14<sup>th</sup> amendment of USA?
- Ans. When he was is USA he was influenced by 14th amendments of the constitution of USA which gave freedom to the black Americans. He saw at once the parallel of the situation for the depressed classes in India. On returning home, he came to be greatly influenced by the life and work of Mahatma Phule. He was greatly influenced by need and feasibility of reform so he decided to devote all his time and talents for improvement of low class people. He started institutions like HItakararini Sabha and the independent labour party to change Indian conditions.
- 2. How did Ambedkar became successful as the chairmen of drafting committee?
- Ans. Ambedkar was made the chairman of the Drafting committee by the farsighted leadership of congress. He was tactful, frank and had utmost patience. He As the chairman of the Drafting committee he anticipated every conceivable requirement of the new polity. He collected example and experience of other country and need of our own society and inserted fundamental rights in the constitution. He explained clearly the meaning and scope of the different provisions of the Draft constitution. He explained the most complicated legal concepts which could be easily understood even by a layman. He was well supported by B N Rau, Alladi Krishnaswami Ayyar, K M Munsi and N. Gopalswami Ayyangar.

# 3. How was SC and ST helped after independence?

Ans. in pre independent india conditions of SC and ST were very bad. In post independent India, we have seen much progress in providing equality of opportunities to the people. Now the door of opportunity are being opened for members of SC and ST which had been closed for them for century. No legal bars are exist today for self expression or self advancement. They are enrolling themselves in institutes of higher learning and entering public services. They have come to occupy high offices of state in state and center. Judges, ambassadors and governors have been drawn from there ranks. They have acquitted themselves creditably in all these positions of responsibility.

# 4. Nehru describes Dr. Ambedkar As 'a symbol of revolt'?

Ans. Nehru described Ambedkar as 'a symbol of revolt'. He said that I have no doubt that, whether we agreed him or not in many matters, that perseverance, that persistence and that. If I may use the word some time virulence of his opposition to all this did keep the people mind awake and did not allow them to become complacent about matters which could not be forgotten, and helped in rousing up those groups in our country which had suffered for so long in the past. It is, therefore, sad that such a

prominent champion of the oppressed and depressed in India and one who look such an important part of our activities, has passed away.

- Write a note on Dr. Ambedkar's idea/perception of the three pillars of state. 5.
- Ans. Dr. Ambedkar had a clear perception of mutuality of the three pillars of state. There are the legislative, the executive, and the judiciary. He opined that the constitution is a fundamental document. It is a document which defines the positions and powers of the three organs of the state. It also defines that the power of executive and the powers of legislature as against the citizens as done in the chapter in fundamental rights. In fact the purpose of constitution is not only to create the organs of the state but also to limit their authority to avoid tyranny and oppression by the legislature and the Executive.he released that the jurisdiction of each should be clear and untrammeled. At the same time he had a sense of the importance of the role of citizens.

# THE SONG OF NATION

- The poet call the temples as 'epics in stone' because. 1. A. They are the inspiration to write epics
  - B. They reveal culture and tradition of our society.
  - c. Epics are written on them
  - D. They represent our epics.
- 'Of your children that died to call their own' your children here refers to 2. A. Patriots C. Seer B. Freedom Fighters D. Poets
- 3. The poet is guerulous because he A. Has no song to sing about mother India B. Is angry on mother India C. Was hurted by his wife

  - D. None of the above
- The night, The sun God and The clear dawn in the poem represent 4. A. Only Happiness **B.** Only Sorrow
  - C. Happiness cancelling all the sorrows D. destiny of the nation
- According to the poet the contribution of seers and prophets are 5. A. They created a clear path to pilgrims B. They followed pilgrims C. They followed god C. They created temple

# **ANSWER IN 2-3 SENTENCES :**

#### Identify the two speakers in the poem. What does the poet want to sing about? 1.

- Ans. The two speakers in the poem are the poet and the mother India. The poet wants to sing about wonderful culture, heritage, and richness of India.
- What are the epics? Why does the poet call the temples as 'epics in stone'? 2.
- Ans. Epics are the stories narrating deeds and adventures of heroic or legendary characters of past or past history of nation. In India temples are called the cradle of Indian heritage and culture. The every temple which was built by great kings tells about Indian great stories of Ramayana and Mahabharata.

What does the poet mean by 'of your children that died to call you their own'? 3.

Ans. The poet calls our Freedom fighters as children that died to call you their own. Many

36

freedom fighters who fought against British to get freedom. Innumerable children of India sacrificed their lives for mother India

- 4. Why is the poet querulous? What does he want to do?
- Ans. The poet didn't get any songs to sing for Mother India. So he is querulous. He wants to sing a song about great culture, heritage, tradition and all its richness.
- 5. How does the poet describe the Mother's anger? Name the figure of speech mentioned in stanza 2?
- Ans. He describes Mothers anger by saying that the path that the seers and prophets followed beat into her ears like gong because they have flown about her as pitiful thing. The figure of speech is 'Simile'
- 6. How was the nature of India described by the poet?
- Ans. The ranges of Himalayan Mountains are covered with snow all the time. The country is surrounded by the three sees and every morning there should be clear with golden rays which washes palm of mother India.
- 7. Explain the lines 'A song bathed in the stain less blue Unvapouring in the void?'
- Ans. The poet worried whether he wouldn't get any pure song to sing. He feels that a song should be pure and permanent without being vapoured like water in the sky. He wants a song that without affecting our motherland Like Poverty disease, environmental degradation, ignorance, illiteracy, unemployment, caste, and class conflicts and a hundred forms of exploitation.

#### 8. What does 'the Motherland writing the book of the morrow' signify?

Ans. As poet said our mother India has to write the book of our destiny, cancelling all our sorrow. Tomorrow should be clear dawn. Our nightmare should fled in the night. We have to write our bright future

#### 9. Write in brief your vision of the future of India.

Ans. The future of India should be like fresh and clear morning. All our social evils of country should be fled in over a night as nightmare. There should be no poverty, ignorance, illiteracy, castes and unemployment.

10 How does the poet praise India being developed in industry and technology?

Ans: The poet praises dams, lakes, industries, ship building yards, hard working indian try to improve technology and to raise indian global position in automic science.

#### EXTRACTS :

- 1. "Said the mother in indignant words .That beat into my ears like gong , That flew about me, a pitiful thing, like great white birds"
  - a. Who is the speaker?

Ans: Motherland

b. What does That refer to?

Ans: The path followed by the seers and prophets

c. What is the figure of speech mentioned here?

Ans: Simile

d. Why does speaker say so?

Ans: Because the path that the seers and prophets followed beat into her ears like gong because the path flown about her as pitiful thing.

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

2.	'Is there no song that I can sing of you'
	a. Who does 'I' refer to? Ans: The poet
	b. What feeling does speaker express in the line?
	Ans: The feeling of querulous
	c. Why does speaker feel so?
	Ans: Because the mother of India rejects all the appeal of poet to sing a song for her.
3.	'Nervous, I yet would ask, deeming it my task'
	a. Who is the speaker? Ans: The poet
	b. What would the speaker yet ask?
	Ans: The speaker would ask the mother India to sing a sing for her
	c. What does the phrase 'my task' refer to?
	Ans: My tast refers to singing song for mother India in phrasing its glorious history.
	d. Why does the speaker feel nervous?
	Ans: The mother India does not ready to accept his request for singing song
4.	'Shall I sing of your rock cut temples, epics in stone,'
	a. Who is the listener of this line?
	Ans: The Mother India.
	b. What does the phrase 'epic in stone' refer to?
	Ans: the stories of Ramayana and Mahabharata are sculpted in Indian temples.
	c. What does the line tell about?
	Ans: It tells about rich and glorious culture and heritage of India.
5.	'A song bathed in the stain less blue Unvapouring in the void?'
	a. Who is the speaker? Ans: The poet is the speaker
	b. When does speaker make the statement?
	Ans: when the mother India rejects all the song the poet wants to sing for her, the poet
	feels like that.
	c. What does the phrase ' unvapouring in the void?'
	Ans: a song doesn't disappear into nothingness.

#### Summary of the poem :

The Poem was written by Vinayaka Krishna Gokak in the form of a dialogue between Mother India and the Poet. In this Poem the Poet wants to present glorious picture of the past and also wishes to paint India's natural beauty.

As Indians we can rightly be proud of our country's natural beauty, Its Rich cultural heritage, its ancient wisdom, its glorious freedom struggle and its industrial progress. As the same time we should not ignore the numerous ills affecting our motherland Like Poverty disease, environmental degradation, ignorance, illiteracy, unemployment, caste, and class conflicts and a hundred forms of exploitation. We should try to eradicate them as far as Possible.

As poet said our mother India has to write the book of our destiny, cancelling all our sorrow. Tomorrow should be clear dawn. Our nightmare should fled in the night. We have to write our bright future.

# THE CONCERT



MULTIPLE CHOICE :

1)	Pandit Ravi Shankar's concert was arranged at					
	<u>A.Shanmukhananda Auditorium</u>		b. Gangapur			
	c. Pune		d. Cricket Stadium	า		
2)	Pandit Ravi Shankar is	the maestro in p	laying			
		<u>sitar</u>	C. violin	D. drum		
3)	The chance of life time	—				
	A.To talk to Ravi shankar		e Ravi shankar his I			
	C. to be a part of concert	<u>D. To hear a</u>	nd see Pandit Rav	<u>'i Shankar</u>		
4)	The announcement in t			was		
	A. there was a cricket ma	atch at wanede sta	adium			
	B. Five men were killed ir	n an accident				
	C. flower show had been	arranged at the ne	earby park			
	D.Pandit Ravi Shankar's		-	nananda auditorium.		
5)	The known frightening					
		A. her brother Anant was going to die of cancer				
	B. She would be failed in	•••••				
	C. The doctors would visi		•			
	D. She would go to conce					
6)	The native place of Smi	•				
		Delhi	<u>C. Gaganpur</u>	D. Kolkata		
7) Smitha's family used to stay in Bombay at						
	•		partment in Bomb	ay		
	c. Resort in Bombay D.					
8)	The suggestion given b	•				
	A. to walk in the park B		c. play sitar	D. play tabla		
10)	The audience respected			ankar by		
		shouting slogan o	on nim			
	c. a standing ovation D.		1 4 4			
11)	The person who made					
40	A. the singer B. Ravishar		-			
12)	Smitha wriggled throug	•				
	A. meet and see Pandit RaviShankar		B.Meet the music band D.Invite Ravi Shankar home			
40)	C. congratulate Ravi Sha			ankar nome		
13)	Who was a frequent accompanist to Pandit Ravi ShankarA. Ustad Bismilla KhanB.Ustad Allah Rakha					
	A. Ustad Bismilla Khan C. his friend					
		•	d Ravishankar?			
	A. large moustachioed r c. The audience	lidii	B . Alla Rakha D. Ravishankar			

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

- **15)** Anant wanted to become a great A. flutist B. singer
- C. musician **D. sitarist**
- 16) Anant raised himself and his eyes were shining even in his sick bed because\_\_\_\_\_A. he was illB. he knew the truth about his death
- c. he saw a nightmare **D. he heard the name of Pandit Ravi Shankar**
- **17)** Smitha and her family had come to Bombay so that A. the children get good education
  - **B.** Anant could be treated at the cancer Hospital in the city
  - c. to attend music program me d. to spend holiday

#### Questions :

#### 1. Why did Smitha get excited after reading the newspaper?

Ans. Smitha got excited after reading the newspaper because it had the newsof Pandit Ravi Shankar's music concert at the Shanmukhananda Auditorium the next day.

#### 2. Why do you think the mother cautioned the girl?

- Ans. Smitha's brother, Ananth had been struck with cancer. He was very sick was lying on the bed. So the mother cautioned Smitha not to disturb Ananth.
- 3. Why did Smitha's family move to Bombay?
- Ans. Smitha's brother Ananth was suffering from cancer. They moved to Bombay from their native town Gaganpur, so that he could be treated at thecancer hospital in the city.
- 4. For a moment, Smitha had forgotten something. What was it?
- Ans. For a moment, Smitha had forgotten that Ananth was very ill and not in aposition to go to the concert.
- 5. In what way was the truth frightening to Smitha?
- Ans. Though Smitha and her family had pretended Anant would get well, she had known that Anant was going to die of cancer. This was frightening toSmitha.
- 6. Do you consider Ananth a talented boy? Justify your answer.
- Ans. Yes, Anant was a talented boy. He was the best table tennis player in the school and the fastest runner. He was learning to play the Sitar and was already able to compose his own tunes.
- 7. They had come with high hopes", what hopes did Ananth's parents have?
- Ans. Ananth's parents had high hopes in the miracles of modern science. They thought that he would be cured. Then he could talk and run again and hoped that he would become a great sitarist one day.
- 8. What did the doctors say to Ananth's parents? Were they words of hope or words of despair?
- Ans. The doctors asked Ananth's parents to take him home and give him whatever he liked. They were the words of despair because his parents realized that he had not many days to live.

#### 9. Why were the neighbors surprised?

- Ans. The neighbors could not believe their eyes because they saw Pandit Ravi Shankar, the Sitar maestro and Ustad Allah Rakha, the great tabla maestro arrived to the boy's house.
- 10. Pandit Ravi Shankar and Ustad Allah Rakha performed in the boy'shouse. How was this an unusual incident?

- Ans. Pandit Ravi Shankar and Ustad Allah Rakha were world famous musicians. In spite of their busy schedule and high profile they visited the boy and performed for him.
- 11. Why do you think that Smitha's mother cautioned her not to make noise?
- Ans. Smitha on looking up the newspaper almost shouted with excitement.But her brother Anant was ill and suffering from cancer.She cautioned her not to make noise so that he could rest.

#### 12. What was the chance of a lifetime for Ananth?

- Ans. Ananth was a music lover and was also learning to play sitar. Listening to Sitar maestro's music and attending his concert was the chance of life time for Anant.
- 13. 'Suddenly a daring thought came to her' what was the daring thought?
- Ans. Smitha knew that her brother Anant was dying of cancer.she wanted to fulfill his wish. So she thought of going to the concert and request Pandit Ravi Shankar to perform for her brother.
- 14. How did Smitha enjoy the concert?
- Ans. Smitha was spellbound by the music. As the first notes came over the air, she felt as if the gates of enchantment and wonder were opening. But every beat of Tabla reminded her of Ananth's voice.
- 15. Pandit Ravi Shankar and Ustad Allah Rakha performed in the boy's house'How was this an unusual incident?
- Ans. Pandit Ravi Shankar and Ustad Allah Rakha were world famous musicians. In spite of their busy schedule and high profile they visited the boy and performed for him.
- 16. In the course of the story 'The Concert', whom do you consider to be more worried, Smitha or Anant?
- Ans. In the story, Smitha was more worried than others. Though attending the concert was a chance of lifetime, she could not enjoy it completely because Anant was not with her. She was always thinking how to fulfill Ananth's wish.
- 17. As Smitha sat listening to the music,she was spellbound. But all the while,her mind was echoing something else, What was that?
- Ans. Spellbound ,Smitha listened to the unfolding ragas,but all the while her mindwas planning to meet Ravi Shankar personally and share her feelings about her brother's plight. If possible she would like to arrange for home concert for her brother. That was a the chance of his life.
- 18. Did Smitha tell what she had in her mind to the musicians? Who responded toher request immediately. What was the response?
- Ans. Yes, Smitha told the story of her brother who lay sick at home, and how helonged to hear them. The Moustache man responded to her immediately and the concert was arranged at their home for him.
- 19. Can you say that the concert wass entertaining Smitha.Justify your answer.
- Ans. No, The concert was not entertaining Smitha. Because she was feeling sorrow at the pathetic condition of her brother Ananth.

#### EXTRACTS :

1. "You'll wake him up. You know he needs all the sleep and rest he can get" a. Who was sleeping? Ans :Anant was sleeping

b) Why does he need rest?

Ans.:Ananth was suffering from cancer and had becom every week. So he needed rest. C) What was happening there?

Ans- Smitha was reading news paper loudly

#### 2. "We mustn't miss the chance"

a) What chance did the boy not like to miss?

- Ans.: The boy did not like to miss the chance of attending Pandit Ravishankar's music concert. b) Why is he so eagerto make use of it?
- Ans.: The boy himself was a Sitar player. He was suffering from Cancer and was very ill. He thought he might not get another chance, so he was eager to make use of it c) Do you think the boy would get a chance in future? Ans : No
- 3. "Take him home.Give him the things he likes,indulge him"
  a) Who said the above statement? Ans.: Doctors who were treating Ananth
  b) Why did they say so?
- Ans.: Ananth's condition grew worse with each passing day and the doctors knew that the boy had not many days to live. This made them to say so.
  - c) Were these words of hopes and despair? Ans.: despair

#### 4. A walk in the park might make you feel better"

- a) Who suggested a walk in the Park? Ans. : Aunt Sushila suggested a walk in the parkb) How was her mood in the Park?
- Ans.: Smitha felt alone in the midst of people who were walking, running, playing etc. She was lost in her thoughts.
  - c) Why did speaker make the statement?
- Ans.: Smitha cried with sad knowing Ananth had not many days to live.

#### 5. "But they did not voice their fears"

a.What did Ananth's parents fear?

Ans.: Ananth's parents feared that the boy had not many days to live.

b. why did speaker behave towards him

Ans- they knew that he had not many days to live

c. How did they behave towards him?

Ans.: They laughed, talked and surrounded Anant with whatever made him happy. They fulfilled his every need

### 6. "Enjoy yourself, lucky you!"

b. Why is she lucky?

A Who considered as lucky?

Ans- Smitha

Ans': She is lucky because she was go-

ing to attend the music concert of pandit Ravi Shankar, with her father.

c. Why did speaker say like this?

Ans-Ananth could not go because of his ill health

#### 7. "Panditji is a busy man. you must not bother him with such requests"

a. Who was bothering panditji?"b.What was the request made?Characteristic and the second second

42

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

c. Why was she bothering?

Ans : Ananth was suffering from cancer and she wanted to fulfill his desires

- "No, how can I? We've always done things together" 8. a. Who has done the things together? Ans.: Anant and Smitha b. Why is it not possible now? Ans. : It was not possible now because Ananth had cancer and was confined to bed. He couldnot go anywhere with Smitha. c.How was she consoled? Ans: Smitha's aunt suggested to take walk in the park to feel better. "Tomorrow morning we perform for theboy" 9. A. Who would perform for the boy? Ans. : Pandit Rivishankar and -Ustad Allah Rakha would perform for theboy. b.Why would they perform? Ans : Because they understood the boy's pathetic condition. c) Where was the concert arranged? Ans: The concert was arranged at the apartment / in Ananth's home. 10. They could not believe their eyes. 'It is ...... It's not possible?' they said. a. Who could not believe their eyes? Ans.: Neighbors could not believe their eyes b.What couldn't they believe their eyes? Ans.: Pandit Ravishankar and Ustad Allah Rakha came to Aunt Sushila's house to play for Anant. c.Why could not they believe? Ans : They thought they were great persons and could not come to home and play for he boy. 11. "little girl, said the mustachioed man who had made a long speech Panditji is a busy man, you must not bother him with such requests" a. Who is the mustachioed man?
  - b. Who does you refer to?
- Ans: the man who made long boring speech. Ans: Smita

c. Why did the listener come there? Ans:to request panditji to come to her home to have concert for her dying brother Ananth as he was suffering with cancer.

### **QUESTIONS** :

### 1. Why do you think that Smitha and Ravi Shankar deserve the appreciation of readers?

Ans. Smitha could not take Anant with her to the concert because he was suffering from cancer. She went to the concert with her father and enjoyed Ravshankar's recital. She also wanted her brother to listen to Ravi Shankar's music. So, she approached Ravi Shankar and told all about Anant and requested him to come to his house and play sitar. No one could imagine that a great musician like Ravi Shankar would agree to her request. But he along with tabla maestro Ustad Allah Rakha played for Anant. Thus Smitha and Ravi Shankar deserve our appreciation

#### 2. 'Where there is will, there is way'. How is this saying apt for Smitha?

Ans. Smitha and Anant had done things together. Now Anant was ill and could not accompany Smitha to the music concert. Instead at sitting home and repenting forthe loss, she went to the concert with her father. She also gathered courage to request Panditji to come to her house and play for Anant. To everyone's surprise maestros agreed to her request and came to her house and played for him. It was unbelievable for everyone. Thus we can justify that 'Where there is will, there isway' is apt for `Smita.

#### 3. Smita was successful in fulfilling her brother Ananth's dream.describe.

Ans. Smita was very considered to her brother Ananth. He was suffering with cancer and was not many days to live. He was a great fan of Ravishakar Panditji and had a dream of attending his concert. Smita wanted to fulfill the dream so that she attended the concert with her father. In the concert her mind was thinking only about Ananth's dream. After the concert she went forward to meet Ravishankar Panditji and told the dream of her brother and his condition. Then she also requested him to come and have a concert for her brother.Ravishankar was a kind hearted man and he agreed to have a concert in her home for his fan. In the next day morning Ravishankar and Alla Rakha went themselves to Anath's home and gave concert for him. Ananth felt very happy and breathed last. In this way she fulfilled her brother's dream.



- 1. His rundown shoes have paper in them,it suggests Jozzplayer.<br/>a. was poorb. had come running
  - c. was a good sportsman d. kept his notedin his shoes
- 2. the musical instrument mentioned in the poem is<br/>A. fluted. saxophoned. saxophone
- he is no longer a man, no not even a black man, what else is he?
   a. Preacher
   b. a bird
   c. white man
   d. an ancient mariner
- 4. Now preaching it with words of screaming notes and chords. These line ssuggests Jazzplayer
  - a. was shouting very loudly

b. had an old saxophone

- c. wanted to louder thanother player
- d. wanted to give a message through his music.
- 5. His wrinkled old face so full of the weariness of living. These line shows that Jazzplayer was
  - <u>A. an old man full of worries</u> c. old man tired of living
- b. old but cheerful
- d. tiredof his Winkles

#### Answer the following questions in two or three sentences :

#### 1. Give a short description of the Jazz player

Ans. The Jazz player has wrinkled old face. He is unshaven and has a tired look. He wears a faded blue shirt, old necktie and jacket. His shoes too are old andtorm out.

### 2. Why do you think the Jazz, player keeps her head down?

Ans. The Jazzplayer is a poor, old man. He has led a hard life. He is tired and keeps his head down.

#### 3. What message does the Jazzplayer want to convey?

Ans. The Jazz player wants to convey to the world that he is Black man who can draw people towards him through his music.

### 4. How does the Jazz player change as he plays on the saxophone?

Ans. As the Jazz player starts to play on the Saxophone he is no longer an old Black man. He produces wonderful music and appears to be like a bird flying higher and higher.

#### 5. How has the Jazzplayer held his instrument?

- Ans. The Jazzplayer has held his instrument across his chest. It is supported by a wire coat hanger from his neck.
- 6. 'He is no longer a man' says the poet. Who else is he supposed to be if he isno longer a man?
- Ans. The Jazz player forgets everything when he plays the music to preach the world. At that moment he feels like a bird which gathers his wings and flies higher and higher

#### **EXTRACTS** :

1. Gently he lifts if now to parted lips,see? To tell that all the word that he is a black man.

a.What does he lift? Ans.: He lift an old saxophone. b.What message does he want to convey?

Ans.: Through his music, he wishes to convey the message of God to his listeners. c. What does parted lips mean in the poem?

Ans. He put his saxophone and blow

# 2. his rundown shoes have paper in them and his rough unsaven face shows pain in wach wrinkle.

a. Why do shoes have paper on them?

Ans - Shoes are old and torn and he has put paper in them to be able to wear them. b.What does the description of the face suggest?

Ans.: The Jazz player's face is unshaven which suggests that he does not carefor his appearance. He has led a hard life and aged so his face in wrinkled.

c. What does parer on shoes tell?

Ans : He was a poor man.

#### 3. "He is no longer a man, no, not even a Black man"

A. Who is the man here?

Ans: The man here isthe jazzplayer.

B. He says "he is not a man"Then what else is he?

Ans: He says he is not a man, not even a black man like ancient mariner. He imagines like a bird that flies higher and higher.

c. When is he no longer a man?

Ans : As the Jazz player begins to play on his Saxophone he is a changed man. d. What do these lines suggest?

Ans. The Jazz player may be a poor old man, but when he plays he seems to go higher and higher like a bird. He can capture hearts through his music.

#### SUMMARY OF THE POEM :

An old Jazz musician is standing like a Black Ancient mariner. His old face is wrinkled and weary. His faded blue shirt has turned dark with sweat.. His stomach is hanging loosely. His jacket is torn out and his necktie is undone and dropping loosely over the jacket. His shoes are torn and are stuffed with paper to cover the holes. His rough unshaven face shows pain. He stands alone head down, eyes closed and ears perked. An old saxophone hangs across his chest supported from his neck by a wire coat hanger. He gently lifts the saxo phone to the parted lips. But once he starts playing music he is no longer a Black man but a bird which gathers his wings and flies high and higher. He seems to be spreading the message of God through his music.

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

45

## DISCOVERY



1.	"The Santa Maria wi	-		-	
	a. Diego	b. Francisco	c. Pedro	d <u>. Guillermo Ires</u>	
2.	"A Good sailor knows his place", says Columbus to Diego. This statement is				
	a. apiece of advice		<u>b. an indirect co</u>	<u>mmand</u>	
	c. an expression ofso	rrow	d. a cry ofhorror		
3.	Columbus feels that	his worst enemy is			
	a. the angry sea		b. his vision		
	c. his uncontrolled t	tongue	d. the sailors son	g	
4.	Pepe is always eage	er to say that he is o	ever———	—— to Columbus	
	<u>a.loyal</u>	b. disobedient	c. disloyal	d. unfaithful	
5.	'Who's to put him in	irons?' challenges	Guillermo.The pe	erson meant by 'him'	
	in this context is:	0	•	,	
	a. Guillermo	b. The first man to	move towards Colu	Imbus	
	c. Columbus	<u>d. The first man w</u>	ho challenged Co	<u>lumbus</u>	
6.	Columbus set out fr	om Spain			
	a. for a long holiday	b. to become	a new world		
	c. to discover a new				
7.	Columbus said that	he had discovered	one thing. It was		
	a. there were no buts		b. a good sailor k	nows his place	
	c. God's will was his v	will d. a man with	n a vision has to fo	ollow italone.	
8.	"Your best cannot be bettered", says Columbus. This implies that				
-	a. No one is perfect at a				
	c. Once we reach the	-			
	d. Columbus is not tota	· · · · ·			
9.	'I will perform it mys	elf. savs Columbus	. What does 'it' m	ean here?	
-	a. To navigate the s		b. To out Guillerm		
	c. To turn back the he	-	d. To stop the sea	amen singing	
10.	After 'a perceptible	•	•		
	a. Pedro	· •	c. Diego	d. Francisc	
11.	"Everybody doubts		0		
•••	a. Pearo	b. Pepe	c. Diego	d. Juan Pation	
12.	Columbus says, "we		0		
	provide solutions?				
	a. Desperate	b. Trust/Faith in Go		d. Helplessness	
13.	The seamen were d		_ 0,		
	a. they were tired ar		to their homes ar	nd families	
	b. there was a storm			red by the captain	
	d. the food in the ship	was exhausted.			

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

46

14.	"Your duty is to obey me as mine is to obey the Royal sovereigns of Spain who				
45)	sent me". These words prove that <u>Columbus was loyal to Royal Sovereigns</u> The captain of the discovery of The New World(America) was				
15)	A. Gullermo Ires	B.Pedro Gutierrez		D.Columbus	
16)	The name of the shi				
10)		B Spainia	C. Titanic	D.Britannica	
17)	The seamen were si		O. marile	D.Dinarinioa	
,	A. keep their spirits		dom		
	c. enjoy their voyage				
18)	The word which was				
- /	A. irons	B. ship	C. Spain	D. mutiny	
19)	The song in the beg	inning of the play"	The Discovery" c	onveys the	
	A. sorrow mood of t		B. happy mood o		
	C. active mood of the	seamen.	D. jealousy mood	d of the seamen.	
20)	What was Columbus	s' worst enemy? It w	as his_		
	A. unbridled tongue		9	s D. ship in Storm	
21)	What was Columbus				
	A. unbridled tongue	B <u>. Will</u>	C. song of sailors	s D.Storm	
22)	Who preferred the c				
	A. Diego Garcia	B.Columbus	C. Francisco	D. <u>Pepe</u>	
23)	B) Who did Columbus have faith? He had faith in				
	A. Diego Garcia B. Guillermo Ires C. Pedro Gutierrez D. young pepe.				
24)	<ul> <li>"Santa Maria will be the lighter for his carcass" whose words is Pepe quoting here?</li> <li>A.Diego Garcia</li> <li>B. <u>Guillermo Irish</u></li> <li>C. Francisco</li> <li>D. Pedro Gutierrez</li> </ul>				
<b>0</b> 5)	A.Diego Garcia				
25)				ho is child referred?	
20)	A. Diego Garcia		C. Francisco	D. <u>pepe</u>	
20)	What does Columbu			ad by warma	
	A. seaweed on an or C. bubbles that burst		<ul> <li>B. a mast hollow</li> <li>D. Storm against</li> </ul>		
27)	What does Columbu		0	ueep a snip	
21)	A. seaweed on an out		B. <u>a mast hollow</u>	ed by worms	
	C. bubbles that burst	0 0	D. storm against		
28)	What does Columbu				
_0)	A. seaweed on an out		B. a mast hollow		
	C. bubbles that burs			2	
A NI 4				·	
_	ANSWER IN 2-3 SENTENCE EACH : . Write about the physical features of Columbus in the play 'The Discovery'.				
1.	write about the phy	sical features of Co	iumpus in the pla	iy The Discovery'.	

Ans: Columbus is a tall ,well-built man of forty six. Hair prematurely white, complexion fair, almost ruddy. A man of quick temper and irritability which he controls only with an effort .His face, in response, is melancholic.

### 2. The play begins with a song. What mood does this convey?

Ans. The seamen who had been away from home for a long time had not sighted land. The song shows that the seamen were desperate.

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

# 3. 'There are limits to patience', says Diego. What does this suggest about Diego's state of mind?

Ans. Diego along with the seamen were tired of the voyage and wanted to return home, but Columbus was firm and would not give up. So Dicgo desperately said these words.

4. Who do you think has the lives of fifty in his hands? How?

- Ans. Christopher Columbus had the lives of fifty seamen in his hands. He was their captain. The seamen were tried and wanted to return home but Columbus was firm and would not give up.
- 5. What does Columbus feel his worst enemy? Why do you think he feel so?
- Ans. Columbus feels that his uncontrolled tongue is his worst enemy. Columbus was a man who lost his temper soon and was easily irritated. He would often speak rudely to his men which made them angry towards him.
- 7. How did Pedro try to defend the drunken seamen? Was he right in defending them?
- Ans. Pedro defending that the drunken seamen were simple men and wanted to relax by drinking as they did not have the same vision as Columbus. Pedro was not right in defending the seamen because their drinking was leading to unruly behavior
- 6. 'Mutiny is an ugly word', says 'Diego. Is mutiny an ugly word? If so, why?
- Ans. Yes, Because mutiny leads to destruction. Mutiny curbs the development of determination, tolerance and faith in God.
- 8. Colum bus was always furious when he heard the seamen's song. Why did it make him angry?
- Ans. The song expressed the seamen's love for drinking which was a sign of their deep discontent. Columbus was angry because they did not understand what he was trying to achieve
- 9. Columbus feels that whatever he does, it is God's will. What will of God does he like to fulfill through this venture?
- Ans. Columbus felt that it was the will of God that he should discover a new world which would bring wealth to his country and help them to bring new souls on the path to God.
- 10. Columbus says, "would God implant desire to solve mystery and he doesn't provide solutions?" Identify the mood of Columbus in saying this?
- Ans. Columbus had been sailing for many days not yet sighted land. His men were turning against him. But Columbus felt that if God had sent him he would surely help him find a way. These words shows that he had faith in God.
- 11. Whose company did Pepe prefer? What was the reason for this?
- Ans. Pepe preferred to be in the company of Columbus because he had faith in Columbus vision.
- 12. Pepe warns Columbus about some people. Who are they?
- Ans.Pepe warns Columbus about the other sailors because they drank too much and were going against Columbus.
- 13. How did the seamen show their anger towards Columbus?
- Ans. The seamen rushed in an angry mass towards Columbus growling like wild animals.
- 14. "Discipline knows no buts" what made Columbus say this?
- Ans. Columbus wanted to punish Guillermo Ires, who had disobeyed Columbus. So he ordered that Guillermo should be brought to him. Francisco tried to protest, against this. Columbus then said these words.

48

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

#### 15. Why did the Crew mates of Columbus feel desperate?

- Ans. After sailing for so many days, Columbus and his men could not sight a land. They were tired and wanted to return to their homes and families. But Columbus would not give up. So they were desperate.
- 16. 'Devil's track to now here', says Guillermo. What does this suggest about the thinking of the seamen?
- Ans. The seamen felt that Columbus was perhaps possessed by the Devil. He was risking their lives and taking them on a voyage which would take them nowhere.
- 17. How did Pepe prove his loyalty to Columbus?
- Ans.: Pepe was the only person who had faith in Columbus and tried to warn him about how desperate the others had become. When the seamen rushed to kill Columbus, Pepe stood before them with his arms spread out and told them that they would have to kill him first. His loyalty put the others to shame.
- 18. "This is a voyage of discovery". What had Columbus set out to discover?
- Ans. Columbus had set out to discover a new world, where he would find new wealth and a new territory for his king and queen to rule.
- 19. According to Columbus, what was the one thing that he had discovered?
- Ans. Columbus said that he had discovered one thing that if a man had a vision, he must follow it alone. He should not expect loyalty, friendship, discipline or obedience from others.
- 20. Pepe says, "Everybody doubts ...... except me". Why do you think he is an exception.
- Ans. Because Pepe was loyal to his captain and believed that the captain would reach his destiny when the other seamen wanted to attack him with anger.
- 21. Pepe excitedly declares that he is still loyal to the leaders what effect does it have on others like Juan and Guillermo?
- Ans. Pepe was the only one who had the faith that Columbus would discover a new world. But the other sailors like Juan and Guillermo rebelled against him and even tried to attack him and abused Pepe when he came forward to save Columbus from being attacked.

### EXTRACTS :

#### 1. "A good sailor knows his place" says Columbus to Diego

a. Was Columbus giving to Diego a piece of advice or was it an indirect command? Ans.: It is an indirect command.

b. What was'Diego's reaction?

Ans.: Diego tried to suppress his anger and with a scowl goes off from there. C.Why did Columbus say so?

Ans: Because his claim was that only the captain of the ship has the right to appear on the quarter deck.

#### 2. "The Santa Maria will be lighter for his carcass".

a. Whose words was Pepe quoting here?

Ans.: Pepe was quoting the words of Guillermo Ires.

b. What do the words reveal about the person who said them?

Ans: These words show that the speaker was so upset with Columbus that he wished he was dead.

C. What does the word carcass mean here? Ans: Dead body.

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

3. "Once clear of the Devil's track to now here", we'll below our way back home". a. What does 'Devil's track to nowhere' suggest about the thinking of the seamen? Ans.: He was risking their lives and taking them on a voyage which would take them now here. b. How did they prove to be wrong?

Ans.: Very soon, land was sighted and a New World was discovered. So they proved to be wrong.

C. Why did they say so?

Ans : Because the sea men thought Columbus was trying take the lives of fifty men and they were fed up with arrogancy of Columbus.

4. "Your duty is to obey me as mine is to obey the Royal Sovereigns of Spain who sentme'.

a. When did Columbus say these words to Guillermo?

Ans.: Guillermo rebelled against Columbus and demanded that they should give uptheir search for a new land.

b. What do these words prove?

Ans.: These words prove that Columbus was not only a strong leader but was also loyaland obedient towards his king and queen.

C. Why did Columbus say so?

Ans : try to convince Guillermo and the sea men.

#### 5. "Why should one man have lives of fifty in his hands?"

a. Who is the speaker?

Ans.: Diego said these words to Pedro

b. What does the speaker mean?

Ans.: Diego said these words meaning that Columbus had no right to spoil their lives. C. What made him to say so?

Ans : Diego and other Sea men were becoming impatient and they wanted to

### 6. "Mutiny is an ugly word, Sir"

a. Why did the speaker say these words?

Ans.: Diego said these words in reply when Pedro asked him whether he was thinking of rebelling against Columbus.

b. In what way the word is ugly?

Ans.: The word is ugly because Mutiny' is a deed which leads to destruction. C. Why did he say so?

Ans . Because Pedro thought that Deigo and the Sea Men were entertaining the Mutinous thoughts.

### 7. "Discipline knows no buts" says Columbus

a. When did Columbus say this?

Ans.: when He asked Francisco to bring Guillermo Ires to him for speaking against him.Francisco hesitated to obey his order.

b. What did Columbus mean to say by these words?

Ans. : Columbus meant that one should not hesitate to enforce discipline.

C. To what does the word discipline here refer to?

Ans : It refers to the rules and regulations that the sea men and others to follow on the ships.

8.	<b>Pepe said, "Captain, be careful sometimes they are desperate"</b> a. Why did Pepe say these words?
	Ans.: Pepe tried to warn Columbus that these could be danger from them anytime b. Why were they desperate?
	Ans.: they lost their patience as they left their family since many days back they wanted to go back to Spain
	c. Whom does the word they refer to?
•	Ans : to the sea men.
9.	"What! does that child stand between me and death?" said Columbus.
	a. When did Columbus say this?
	Ans.: When Columbus hears Pepe saying that he had to be killed first. B. What had the child done?
	Ans.: The child (Pepe) stood in front of Columbus to protect him from being attacked
	bythe seamen.
	C . Why did Columbus say so?
	Ans : Because when the sea men rushed towards Columbus to kill him Pepe runs to
10	the foot of the stairs and stands with arms spread out. "They ought to stop that. The captain is always furious when he hears it."
	A. Who should stop that?
	Ans: The sailors should stop that.
	B. What does 'it' refer to? Why is the captain furious to hear that?
	Ans: 'it' refers to the seamen's song. The captain Columbus is furious to hear that because he did not like the attitude of sailors.
	C. What made him to say so?
	Ans : Juan thought that the song of the sea was having the smell of mutiny.
12.	"There are limits to patience, sir"
	A. Who lost his patience? Ans: Diego lost his patience. B. Who is he speaking to? Ans: Diego is speaking to Pedro
	<ul><li>B. Who is he speaking to?</li><li>C. Why did speak so?</li><li>Ans: Diego is speaking to Pedro.</li><li>Ans: He lost his patience and wanted to go back to Spain.</li></ul>
13.	"We're like bats trying to fly by day. It's time he gave way. Why should one man
	have the lives of fifty in his hands?"
	A. Who is compared to bats?
	Ans: The seamen are compared to bats flying in the morning. B. What does the speaker mean?
	Ans: Speaker means that the seamen are forced to continue voyage
	C. Who had the lives of fifty in his hands?
	Ans: Columbus had the lives of fifty in his hands.
14.	A curb for my tongue-oh a curb for my unbridled tongue, my worst enemy! My will, friend, because God's will, shall that suffice"
	A. Who said this to whom? Why?
	Ans: Columbus said this to Pedro. Because Columbus confessed his quick temper
	as enemy and his will Power as friend.
	B. Why did he call his will as friend and tongue as enemy? Ans: Because his will is the will of God where as his tongue speaks words of discom-
	fort to seamen.
	C .What does the word "unbridled" mean?
	Ans : Un controlled

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

51

15.	. "I do not claim your confidence, sir."				
	A. Who do 'I 'refer to? Who is the 'sir 'here?				
	Ans: 'I 'refer to Pedro. Columbus is the 'sir 'here				
	B. What was his confident in?				
	Ans: He was his confident in his discovery.				
	C .what was reason for his not being confidence?				
	Ans : Because he Pedro and other sea men were have become desperate and want				
	to go back to Spain.				
16.	"I prefer your company to theirs."				
	A. Whose company does the speaker prefer to?				
	Ans: The speaker prefers the company of Columbus.				
	B. Whose company does not he like? Why?				
	Ans: He does not like the company of the seamen. Because he does not like their				
	desperate and horrible behavior.				
	C .Why did he like his company?				
	Ans : He was the faithful servant of Columbus.				
	D. Who is the speaker? Ans : Pepe.				
17.	"They are simple men and must have their relaxation. We have not all your				
	visions,Captain.'				
	A. Who does 'they' refer to? Ans: 'They' refers to the seamen.				
	B.Who is the captain? What were his visions?				
	Ans: Columbus is the captain. His vision was to discover the New World America.				
	C. What were they doing for relaxation?				
40	Ans : They were singing for relaxation				
18.	"So far, I have discovered but one thing"				
	a. Who do 'l' refer to? Ans.: Columbus				
	b. When did the speaker say this?				
	Ans.: When Columbus was disappointed with the behavior of seamen.				
	c. What had he discovered? Ans.: he discovered that when a man is given a vision, he must follow it alone.				
10	'What! Does that child stand between me and death?				
13.	a. Who does the 'child' refer to? Ans. : Pepe				
	b. When did the speaker say so?				
	Ans.: When Pepe stood between the seamen and Columbus.				
	c. What character does the child's action reveal?				
	Ans.: Pepe was loyal to Columbus				
20.	"Cowards, Cowards! You will have to kill me first"				
	a. Who is the speaker and whom did he call cowards?				
	Ans.: Pepe is the speaker. Guillermo and seamen.				
	b. When did the speaker say these words?				
	Ans.: When Guillermo and some Seamen tried to attack Columbus.				
	c. What character does it reveal about the speaker.				
	Ans.: Pepe was loyal and obedient to Columbus				

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

21. "Stop! What is the meaning of this wild uproar? The first man to move shall spend the rest of the night in irons!"

A.Who is speaker? Who is he speaking to? Ans: Columbus is speaking to thesailors. B:Who was making the uproar? Ans: The seamen were making the up roar. C. Why did he say so?

Ans : Because they were discontented with the voyage. They were home sick.

22. "Your duty is to obey me as mine is to obey the Royal Sovereign of Spain who sent me"

a. Who is the speaker here?
Ans.: Columbus
b. When did the speaker say these words?
Ans.: When Guillermo rebelled against Columbus, Columbus reminded him ofhis duty to obey his order.
c. What character does this statement reveal about the speaker?
Ans.: Columbus as an efficient captain and loyal to his king and queen.

#### Answer the following questions in a paragraph of 8-10 sentences :

# 1. "Columbus had the will power and had the strength to face obstacles" Justify your answer.

Ans. Columbus and his crew left Spain to discover the new world. He and his men sailed for a long time but did not come across the trace of any land. The sailors were fed up. They wanted to go back to their places. They asked Columbus to turn the ship back to their country. When Columbus asked then to wait for a few days, the crew became angry. The sailors thought of revolting and even killing Columbus. One of the sailors rushed towards Columbus to kill him, Pepe another sailor interviewed him and saved the life of Columbus.Columbus had a lot of patience and encouraged his sailors not to become desperate.After a few days Columbus saw a light faintly flickering raising up and down.The land he discovered was west Indies. The crew jumped with joy.

#### 2. Give some instances show that Pepe was loyal to Columbus till the end.

- Ans. Pepe was the only person who had faith in Columbus and try to warn him out how desperate other had become. When seamen rushed to kill Columbus, Pepe stopped them with his arms spread out and told that they would have to kill him first. His loyalty put others to shame. He hated the seamen as they drank too much. He liked Columbus because he had a vision, he was a man of principals. He gave much importance to the duty, disciple and loyalty. He was also an eminent leader. So he always wanted to be in the company of Columbus.
- 3 How did the crew members expres their discontent with Columbus? Columbus and a group of seamen sailed from spain to find a new land. They sailed for many days and even for monts but they didnot find any new land. Sailers were sick and desperate of the journy. they wanted to go back to home and join their family. They made appeal for Columbus but it was vain. the disperated seamen drank too much, singing song and revolted againest Columbus.Gullermo called him as Devil and said that Santa Mariya will be lighter for his carcass. Diego compared seamen bats flying by day. Columbus order to Francisco to bring Gullermo for his arrogant behaviour but he refused to bring him. Gullermo lost his temper and attacked on

columbus to kill him.

# 4 Illustrate how Columbus and his seamen different in their view in the voyage of the Discovery.

Columbus and a group of seamen sailed from spain to discovere a new land but they sailed for many days and even for monts but they didnot find any new land. Sailers were home sick and desperate of the journy, they wanted to go back to home and join their family. They made appeal for Columbus but it was vain, the disperated seamen drank too much, singing song and revolted againest Columbus. Gullermo lost his temper and attacked on columbus to kill him. Columbus was a man of Disciplarian. Columbus had a lot of patience and encouraged his sailors not to become desperate he had a strong will power to achive his goal, when all his crewmates desparated and revolted he was alone and faced the revolt of seamen. Columbus had the will power and had the strength to face obstacles. He never lost his hopes for discovering a new land.

## BALLED OF THE TEMPEST

- 1. There we kissed the little maiden'The sailors did this because
- Ans. She filled their hearts with hope
- 2. The captain's daughter had faith that
- Ans.god would protect them
- 3. The sailors in darkness amidst the tempest could do nothing except-.
- Ans. Praying
- 4. The sailors heard the rattling sound of
- ans. The breaking sound of the mast
- 5. The fearful thing in winter on the ocean is
- Ans.the tempest

#### **ANSWER IN 2-3 SENTENCES :**

- 1. Usually storms are formed in the deep sea. What precaution have the sailors got to take before voyage?
- Ans. Before setting out on a voyage, sailors have to make sure that the ship is strong enough to withstand any storm at sea. They have to be well stocked with food and water. They need life saving jackets and be sturdy swimmers.
- 2. When the captain shouted. 'We are lost'. How did his daughter react?
- Ans. His daughter held his hand and gently asked if God protected us on land would he not protect us when they are on ocean.
- 3. The speaker and his crew-mates sat in darkness and prayed. What did they hear?
- Ans. They heard the storm raging at sea, then the sailors sat in the darkness and prayed; The captain staggered down the stairs and shouted 'we are lost'.
- 4. The crew mates kissed the maiden and spoke in better cheers. What made them feel cheerful?
- Ans. The little girl asked her father if God protected them on land. Would he not protect them on the sea. Her faith in God brought hope to the sailors and they kissedher in joy.
- 5. 'A ship is always safe at the shore, but it was not built for that' what does this mean?
- Ans. A ship is built to take people and goods across the seas. If it just stays on the shore it will no doubt be unharmed, but would be of no use to anyone.

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

#### The poet uses the phrase 'the hungry sea'. What can the reader imagine from this? 6.

Ans. The poet personifies the sea hungry because when the storm is very severe, thehuge waves will drown the ship and sailors as if the sea is very hungry.

#### Extracts :

#### 1. 'We were crowded in the cabin, Not a soul would dare to sleep'

a. Who does the word 'we' refer to here?

Ans.: 'We' refer to the sailors.

b. Not a soul would dare to sleep-why was it so?

Ans.: Because the sailors were afraid that the storm would destroy the ship andtheir lives. c. What does the word'cabin' mean?

Ans- Shelter for sleep

#### 'tis a fearful thing in the winter to be shattered by the blast 2.

a. What is to as a 'fearful thing'?

Ans.: To be caught in a fierce storm at sea in winter is the fearful thing. b. How did it affect the sailors?

Ans. : The sailors lay awake saying a silent prayer in the dark.

c. Where did the fearful thig appear? What did it shatter?

Ans: The fearful thing appeared in the mid sea. It shattered the mast of the ship.

#### 3. "We are lost!"The captain shouted

a. Who does 'we'referlb?

Ans:'We' refers to the chptain of the ship and his crew mates.

b. Why did he say so? Ans: The storm was very fierce and the captain feared that the ship would be torn apart any moment.

c. How did his daughter react to the situation?

Ans .: His daughter remained calm. Holding her father's hand she asked if God could protect them on land would he not protect them on sea

#### "Then we kissed the little maiden And we spoke in better cheer" 4.

a. Who was the little maiden?

Ans.: The little maiden was the captain's daughter.

b. Why did they kiss her? Ans.: The little girl brought back hope to the sailors by saying that God would protect them. So, they kissed her. Ans :sailers

c. Who do we refer to?

#### Paragraph answer :

#### Q. Write in your own words the substance of the poem 'Ballad of the Tempest'

Ans. It was dark, stormy night in winter a ship was out at sea. Huge waves dashed against the ship and the roar of the sea filled the sailors with fear. They crowded together in one cabin. Even the bravest among them could not sleep. They just sat in the darkness and prayed. As the storm continued, the captain too gave up hope and said that nothing could save them. At that point, the captain's little daughter held his hand and quietly asked if God protected them on sea. Her faith in God filled the sailors with a new hope. By morning, the storm cleared and they reached harbor safely.

# COLOURS OF SILENCE

Multiple choice questions :



1.	Satish could hear Surender only after he repeated the question three times, because				
	A. he was busy in drawing	B.he was wa	atching T.V		
	C . he did not notice him	D. <b>he could</b>	not hear him		
2.	Satish asked Surender to why he was speaking so softly because				
	A. he was busy in drawing	B.he was wa	atching T.V		
	C . he did not notice him	D. <b>he could</b>	not hear him		
3.	Satish suffered terrible h	eadaches an	d feeling as if d	ark and silent since	
	A.he went to Kashmir	B. met with	an accident		
	C.last operation on his leg	D.suffered f	rom fever		
4.	Surender gave a strange	look at Satis	h because		
	A. he was busy in drawing	B.he was wa	atching T.V		
	C . he did not notice him	D.he could i	not hear him		
5.	Satish met with an accide	ent when he w	vas crossing a $\_$	_	
	A. the road at his school	B <u>.rickety b</u>	ridge over some	<u>e rapids</u>	
	C. the mountain path		ered Himalaya in		
6.	Satish suffered frequently	from bouts	of fever and infe	ctions, especially of the	
	A. <u>ears</u>	B.head	C.eyes	D.legs	
7.	Everything seemed to Sat		-		
	A. he was suffering from bo		•	rated on his legs	
	C.he had lost his hearing		D.he had lost	•	
8.	The doctors didn't know			-	
	A.he was suffering from bo	uts of fever	-	rated on his legs	
	C. ear infection	_		edicines to treat his legs	
9.	Satish did not want to go				
	A. he was suffering from bo	outs of fever	•	rated on his legs	
	C. <u>hearing problem</u>		•	sence to school	
10.	Satish could not talk free				
	A.he was suffering from bo		•	rated on his legs	
	C.his neigh boring children		D. <u>he was un</u>		
11.	Who supported Satish in	•	•	—	
	A.father B. <u>br</u>	other	C.mother	D.teacher	
12.	Satish's father inspired h	im to learn a	great deal by		
	A. painting pictures	B.singing so	ongs		
	C. reading books	D. <u>studying</u>	words and thei	ir pronunciation	
13.	Satish became a voracion	us reader be	cause of his		
	A. <u>father</u> B.br	other	C.mother	D.teacher	

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers) 56 SSLC - ENGLISH - 2018

14.	<ul> <li>The books depressed and left a deep impression on Satish's sensitive mind</li> <li>A. he was not interested in reading books</li> <li>B.he wanted to become an artist</li> <li>c. they were the serious books meant for older children or adults</li> <li>D. he wasdepressed by his plight</li> </ul>					
15.	A. he watched a bird and o	The turning point in Satish's life wasA. he watched a bird and drew its sketchB. his leg was operatedC. he was admitted to a new schoolD.he recovered his hearing				
16.	A. drawing B. pa	<b>to Satish beca</b> inting	u <b>se he was good</b> C. observing	at D. <u>Urdu calligraphy</u>		
17.	<ul> <li>Satish's father took away all note books he had drawn because</li> <li>A. He hated his son B.he was not good at drawing</li> <li>C. <u>He did not want his son to make a living by drawing</u></li> <li>D. that was not his field ofinterest</li> </ul>					
18.	A. <u>father</u> B.bro	-	<b>y of hearing ? It w</b> a C.mother	<b>as his_</b> D.teacher		
19.	<b>. The only solace for Satish</b> A. reading books B. <b>pai</b>	was <u>nting</u>	C. observing birds	D.Urdu calligraphy		
20.	Satish's father found the b A. forget his suffering by goin C.make life in his chosen	ng to school				
21.	<ul> <li>Satish's eyes filled with tears and his father did an uncharacteristic thing. The 'uncharacteristic thing.'- here is that his father did was</li> <li>A. <u>his father sat beside him and encouraged his art of drawing</u></li> <li>B. He brought himarmful of books</li> <li>C. His father found him the best school of arts for him</li> <li>D. supported him in becoming a voracious reader</li> </ul>					
Que	uestions :					
1. Ans	. Why was Satish confined to bed? What was the worst thing for him? Why was it so? Ins. After the accident, Satish's legs became very weak, requiring several operations. He frequently suffered from bouts of fever and infections of the ear. So he was confined to bed. He was becoming deaf and he could not bear the silence.					
	How did Satish meet with ns. On a holiday in Kashmir, Sa ing rickety bridge ovef some	an accident? tish went hiking rapids, his foot	g with his father and slipped and he fell	brother while cross- intothe rapids.		
<b>3.</b> Ans	Satish didn't want to go to as. Satish didn't want to go to a where everyone would make	new school wh	ere he couldn't talk			

57

#### 4. What did Satish see at the far corner of the garden? why did it attract him?

Ans. Satish saw a bird at the far corner of the garden. Its restless energy attracted him.

#### 5. What effect did the books he read have on Satish?

Ans. The books that Satish read were meant for adults. That made him feelde pressed and left a deep impression upon his sensitive mind. His own world is comfortable in comparison to the world outside.

#### 6. Describe the bird in the garden, which attracted Satish?

Ans. The bird had a long tail and black crest. It was restless and full of energy. Its eyes moved here and there and its whole body seemed ever ready to fly.

#### 7. How did the beautiful bird inspire Satish?

Ans. Satish stared at the bird for a long time. After it flew away he took out his note book and pencil and made a sketch of the bird. He soon began to spend a lot of time making different sketches

#### 8. Why was Satish's father against drawing?

Ans. Satish's father felt that artists do not make much money. He wanted abright future for his son. He thought that it is possible only by studying hard. He thought drawing as waste of time.

# 9. Satish's parents were both his well-wishers. But each cared for him in adifferent way. How?

Ans. Satish's father was optimistic and hoped that Satish's hearing would come back. Instead of wasting time on drawing, he wanted Satish to study. Satish'smother did not have the hope that he would recover. She was happy that her son had found good pass time in drawing and she did not want to stop him.

# 10. Satish's father accepted that his son's destiny lay in canvas and paint.What did he promise to do? How did Satish express his gratitude?

Ans. Satish's father promised to find out the best school of arts so that Satish could make his life in the field of his choice. Satish's eyes filled with tears and he hugged his father tightly.

#### 11. Why was the school Satish going kept him out of the school?

Ans. Due his frequent absence and his hearing problem, the school he was attending till then, kept him out of the school. They forced Avtar Narain to look for a new school.

#### 12. Why didn't Satish want to go to a new school?

Ans.Satish didn't want to go to a new school because he couldn't talk to the other children, where everyone would make fun of his deafness.

#### 13. What made Avtar Narain angry?

Ans. Avtar Narain had to look for different schools for his son Satish.But every school didn't want him to educate as he was not able to hear. They treated his son as dumb and asked Avtar Narain to look for other school.So he was angry.

# 14. Why did Satish's father make expeditions to school? Was he successful? If not why?

Ans. Satish was frequently absent from and he had hearing problem. So every school did not want him to admit. So Avtar Narain had to make expeditions to schools. But he was not successful. Because every school did the same thing forthe same reason.

#### 15. How did Satish's brother Inder try to help him?

- Ans. Satish's brother Inder sat for hours with him and talked to hear him, teaching him words and pronunciation. He and his father spent time with him every day, talking to him trying to teach him things.
- 16. what did satish see at the far corner of the garden? why did it attracthim?
- Ans. Satish at the far corner of the garden saw a bird with a long tail and ablack crest. Satish was attracted by its restless energy .Its eyes kept darting, it's whole body was ready for flight any moment.
- 17. How do you say that Satish's parents had difference of opinion about making his life?
- And. Satish's father always wanted him to study well and earn knowledge and become successful in life. But Satish was inclined towards painting .He opposed his son for that. But his mother felt drawing as a means of entertainment for her son.

#### 18. Which action of Satish changed his father's attitude?

- Ans. Satish was busy mixing the colours on his palette. Though he saw his father standing at the staring his painting, he continued with his mixing. This action of Satish changed his father's attitude.
- 19. What was Satish unable to believe?Why?
- Ans. One day Satish's father sat beside him and put his hand on Satish's shoulder. Then Satish was unable to believe his father who was not angry withhis painting.

#### 20. How did Satish express his gratitude to his father?

Ans: Satish's eyes were filled with tears .he hugged his father tightly,his heart was full of love for his stern father who had atlast accepted that his destiny was in canvas and paint.

#### 21. Name the three fields in which SatishGujral has made his name?

Ans. Satish came to be popularly known as Satish Gujral. Heis the famous artist from India. He is an accomplished artist with several forms of art like painting, sculpture and architecture. He is also a writer.

### EXTRACTS :

### 1. "We will have to look for a new school"

a. Who is the speaker?

Ans -Satish's father

b. why did Satish's father have to look for a new school?

Ans.: Due to his frequent absence and hearing problem, the school Satish was attending, informed his father that they could not keep him.

c. What was the result?

Ans.: Satish was not admitted to the new school.

#### "You can learn a great deal of things just by reading" 2. a. Why do you think Satish's father encouraged him toread? Ans.: To get on in life, Satish's father wanted Satish to read. b. How did reading influence Satish? Ans.: As Satish began to read, it was as if a whole world opened out to him. He realized that there were others who had suffered more than him. c. Was Satish successful in reading? Ans-No "This is an idle pass time. You would do better to read and get some knowledge". 3. a. who was spending ideal time? Ans : Satish was spending b. What is an idle pass time according to the above statement? Ans.: Drawing is an idle pass time according to the above statement. c. Why does Satish's father give more importance to reading? Ans.: Satish's father thinks that by reading Satish can make something out of his life, To get on in life, one has to read a lot. "You want to do this very badly, don't you?" 4. a. Who is the speaker? Ans- Satish's father b. What do you think made Satish's father say this? Ans.: Though his father was against it, Satish continued to draw and paint. His father realized that his son had a great love and talent for art. c. What did he do soon after leaving the room? Ans.: He bought paints, brushes of all shapes and sizes and several rolls ofdrawing sheets for Satish. 5. "You will learn arts and make your life in your chosen field" a.Why did you think made Satish's father take this decision? Ans. : Though his father was against it, Satish continued to draw and paint. His father realized that his son had a great love and talent for art. b. How did Satish react to his father's decision? Ans.: Satish's eyes filled with tears. He hugged his father tightly and his heart filled with love for his father c. Did Satish make his mark in life? Ans : Yes he was successful as artist. "It has been more than three years since he became ill, how do you possibly 6. think that he can recover his hearing?" a. Who asked this question to whom? Ans : Satish's mother asked this to his father.(her husband) b. Are these words of pessimism? Ans: yes, these are the words of pessimism. She lost her hope Satish could not recover his hearing. c.Who was optimistic of recovery of his hearing? Ans : Satish's father was optimistic of recovery of his hearing. 7. "Why do you take away his source of entertainment?" a.What was the source of entertainment? Who got that entertainment? Ans: Drawing was the source of entertainment. Satish got that entertainment

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

60

b.Who took away his source of entertainment?Ans: Satish's father took away his source of entertainment.c. Why did speaker make this statement?Ans : he did not want his son to make his life by drawing.

#### **Questions :**

1. "Satish Gujral became a great artist", support this statement mentioning a few of his achievements. OR

"Physical disability is no barrier to success to Satish". Justify.

Ans. Satish met with an accident at the early age of eight so he lost his hearing power. Due to frequent absence and hearing problem, the school he was attending informed his father that they couldn't keep Satish. Other school also refused admission. His father and his brother spent much time with him and provided many books. He developed his interest in painting. In the beginning his father discouraged him but later he accepted that his son's destiny lay incanvas and painting. He admitted his son to the best school of art and made his'life in the chosen field.

Satish Gujral is among the foremost artists of India and accomplished in several art forms like painting, sculpture and architecture. He was also a writer. Exibitions of his works have been held in all over the world and displayed in prestigious museums like museums of modern art, New york, the Hiroshima collections, Washington, National gallery of modern art, New Delhi. He published four books in varies arts. He was awarded the order of crown for the best architectural design of Belgium embassy in New Delhi, he has also been honored with 'Padma Vibhusahan'.

2. Narrate the circumstances of Satish's staying at home.

Or

everything seemed like scenes from some pantomime show to Satish? Why?

Ans. One holiday Satish was hiking with his father and brother. They were crossing a rickety bridge over some rapids. Satish looked down at swirling water below him. His foot slipped. He lost his balance and fell in the rapids. As a result of this his legs and ear were injured. His legs became weak. He suffered frequently from bouts of fever and infectious. He could never hear properly. The teacher did not allow him to come to school because he was weak in hearing and frequently absented for the class. His father tried to get admission to him in some other school but in vain. When he went outside to play with children they teased him. Therefore he was compelled to stay at home

3. Describe the incident that changed the lonely and despairful life of Satish?

Ans. One day he was looking gloomy in to the far corner of the garden, he saw a bird that was unlike any he had ever seen before it had a longish tail and black crest. But most interesting thing of a bird was its restless energy. For a long moment he stared at the bird. When it flew away he jumped down from his bed and took out his notebook and pencil he sketched the bird from his memory with a few deft strokes . he liked the picture and set against the stack of books on his bedside table. His father did not like panting initially but later supported well.

## THE BLIND BOY

#### **OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS :**

- **1.** The speaker of the poem is<br/>A.the poet himselfB.<u>a blind boy</u>C.story tellerd.doctor
- 2. A thing not enjoyed by the blind boy is<br/>A.gifts of sunD.day and nightA.gifts of sunB. gifts of natureC. gifts of sightD.day and night
- The person addressed as 'you'in the poem 'The Blind Boy' is
   A. the poet
   B. social worker
   C.the eye specialist
   D.the people withsight
- 4. The which is not seen by the blind boy but felt by him is<br/>A. the earthD. his bodyB. the sunC. the moonD. his body
- 5. The blind boy feels the sun by A. touch B. day C.night D.warmth
  6. The blind boy can hear his hapless sorrow from A. his sigh B. others' sigh C. joy of others D. sigh of the other blinds
- 7. The blind boy cheers his mind by a A. nature B. birds song C. <u>his song</u> D. voice
- 8. The tone of the blind boy in the poem 'The Blind Boy' is<br/>A. surpriseC. sadnessD. jealousy.

#### **QUESTIONS** :

#### 1. "The blessings of the sight" can you list out a few of them?

Ans. Day and night, beautiful colours, and the beauty of nature around us are the blessings of the sight.

#### 2. How does a blind person understand whether it is day or night?

Ans. Whenever the blind person is awake it is day, when he is asleep it is night for him. Sun does not make his day or night.

### 3 How do others feel about the blind boy? What is his reaction?

Ans. People feel sorry for the blind boy and try to show sympathy towards him. The blind boy says that he does not really understand what he is missing so he does not feel that his life is miserable.

### 4. How does the blind boy pacify himself?

Ans. People sympathize with the blind boy. But the boy does not want to be unhappy about what he cannot get. Though he is poor and blind, he feels rich because he is happy.

### 5. What a normal person understand is almost a riddle to the blind boy. What is it?

Ans. We can recognize day and night. The blind boy can feel the warmth of the sun, but doesn't know how the sun can make day and night because when he falls asleep it is night and whenever he is awake it is day for him.

#### 6. What is the message of the poem 'The Blind Boy'?

Ans. The message of the poem'The Blind Boy' is we should be happy and contented with what god has given us. We should not spoil our happiness by trying to get what we can't.

#### **EXTRACTS** :

#### 1. I feel him warm, but how can be or make it day or night?

A.Who is I here? Ans Blind Boy

B. Whose warmth does he feel? Ans - sun

C. Why does he wonder how he makes day or night?

Ans : The blind boy cannot see the sun rising or setting. So he wonders how he canmake day or night.

#### 2. and, could I ever kee6p awake with me'twere always day

a. Who is the speaker?
b. What is he trying to convey here?
or night for him. When he awake it's a day and when he sleeps it's a night for him.
c. Why does speaker feel so?
Ans- the blind boy

#### 3. But sure with patience I can bear a loss never can know.

a.What is the 'loss' the speaker cannot know?Ans.: The loss here refers to the blessings of sight.b.How does he face the loss? ':Ans.: The blind boy does not feel sorry for what he can not havec. What does it show about him?Ans.: He bears his loss patiently and cheerfully.

#### 4. 'Then let not what I cannot have my cheer of mind destroy".

a. What made the speakers say these words? Ans.: When people felt sorry for the blind boy and felt that he can not enjoy many things, then the blind boy said these words.

b. What was the reply of the speaker?

Ans.: The blind boy does not want to be unhappy about things he cannot get.He wishes to remain cheerful at all times.

c. What is that he can not have?What is the cheer of his mind?

Ans:He can not have his sight back.Singing is his cheer of mind.

#### PARAGRAPH ANSWER :

#### Write the summary of the poem :

This poem describes the feeling of the blind boy. He has never seen light so he wonders what light is like. He wishes to know what his blessings of sight are. People round him talk of beautiful things they see. They say that sun shines bright but he can only feel the warmth of the sun. he can't understand how the sun brings about night and day. He feels day when he is awake and night when he sleeps. He hears people pitying him but he does not feel sorry for himself. He decides that he will not make himself unhappy over something he can't get. He would be happy as a king by being ever cheerful.

# SCIENCE AND HOPE OF SURVIVAL

1.	According to Keilis-Borok The following cannot enjoy a higher income_ A. doctors B. businessmen C. lawyers D.scientists				
2.	"A writer is not a writer merely a person who writes: a writer is a person who				
	cannot live without writing."-this is a saying by				
	A. Keilis-Borok B.Rabindranath Tagore <u>C. Leo Tolstoy</u> D.A scientist				
3.	Science is an exciting adventure where major reward comes from_				
	A.society B.scientists C. discovery itself D. every one				
4.	By science a Scientist cannot get				
	A.camaraderie B.independence C.money D.freedom				
5.	The scientist Keilis-Borok worked on				
_	A.cold war B.nuclear weapons C. <u>seismic waves</u> D.biotechnology				
6.	The scientist Keilis-Borok was summoned by				
	A. the President of Russian Academy of Sciences				
	B.the palace of Nations in Geneva C.the President of America				
-	D.the President of United Kingdom.				
7.	In 1960, every man and child on the earth lived under the threat of annihilation by				
0	A.cold war B. bombs C. great countries D. <u>nuclear weapon</u>				
8.	The technical experts were summoned to the Palace of Nations in Geneva to				
	solve the problem of A. <u>nuclear weapon test ban</u> B. nuclear test C. power politics D.annihilation				
9.	People trained in theoretical physics are head hunted by_				
9.	A. scientific institutionsB. <b>financial institutions</b>				
	C. mathematical institutions D. educational institutions				
10	10. Those who trained in biological research become founders and directors in				
	A. electronics industry B. Pharmaceutical industry				
	C.large scale industry D. bio industry				
11.	According to Keilis-Borok The indispensable guardian and care taker of humanity, is				
	A. nuclear energy B.bio technology C. science D.industrial growth				
12.	If you are so clever, why are you so poor? - The professional addressed as				
	'you' inthe statement refers more than others to a _				
	A. lawyer B. <u>scientist</u> C. doctor D.businessman				
13.	The writer says, "I found myself in Geneva." It expresses ,more than anything else,				
	the writer's				
	A. pleasure B. surprise C.anxiety D.annoyance				
14.	5 7 55 =				
4-	mindedness of scientists				
15.	Which of the following qualities help the scientists to come up with a solution				
	the problem.				
4.0	A. <u>self-assessment</u> B.self-praise C.popularity D.self-discipline				
16	Where was meeting was conduced to discuss about nuclear test ban?				
	a.New York b. London c,Mosco dGeneva				
Com	mater Solution (Questions & Answers) 61 SELC ENCLISIN 2019				

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

#### **QUESTIONS** :

- 1. "According to the author why do some people choose to become scientists though they may not earn much money?
- Ans. According to the author, some people choose to be scientists because they cannot live without science. Their discovery brings the reward. Instead of money, they enjoy freedom, discovering the mysteries of nature and teamwork.

#### 2. Why did the super powers meet in Geneva?

- Ans. The three super powers wanted to come to an agreement ban on the nuclear weapon test. They met in Geneva to discuss the problems that could arise as a result.
- 3. "Technical experts were summoned to solve the problem that arose" What was the problem?
- Ans. The nuclear powers wanted to sign an agreement to stop the test of nuclear weapons. There was a possibility that, one of them could secretly conduct a test. Detecting the violation was the problem.

#### 4. How can you prove that scientists are the most practical people in theworld?

Ans. All new technologies, all new brands of industry are the rusult of research by scientist. It is through the work of the scientists that we have medicines, electronics, new sources of energy, modes of transport and the green revolution. This proves that scientists are the most practical people.

#### 5. What did Borok learn at the Geneva Summit?

Ans. He leant that there were people all over the world, who thought and acted the way he did. So he never felt lonely abroad. He also realized that while there was science there was hope for the survival of mankind.

#### 6. According to the authors why do some people choose to becomeScientists?

Ans. Some people choose to be scientists because they cannot live without science. Discovery is their reward. They enjoy team work, independence and the joy of uncovering one of the mysteries of nature.

#### 7. Why did the super powers meet in Geneva?

Ans.: The three super powers wanted to come to an agreement to put a ban on the nuclear weapon test. They also wanted to discuss the problems that could arise as are sult.

#### 8. How could the Kelis Borok help to solve the problem?

- Ans. The scientist was doing research on the theory of seismic waves. It turned out that the problem had a direct connection with the theory of seismic waves.
- 9. What was the common thread that bound scientists from the opposite sides of the Iron Curtain?
- Ans. The scientists are able to work out a common language, based on respect to hard evidence, indisputable ranking by expertise only and persistent self-criticism.

#### 10. How does basic science help one's career?

Ans. The knowledge of basic science give us new sources of energy, mineral deposits, efficient defense from terrorism, cure from cancer and new forms of transportation.

#### Answer the following in 6-8 sentences :

#### 1. What lessons did the writer learn at the Geneva Summit?

Ans. The writer learnt many things at the Geneva Summit. The first was that there were people all around the world who think and interact the way he did. Secondly, he learnt

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

that with those people with the same interests around him, he could never feel lonely abroad. Thirdly he realized that science is our indispensable guardian and caretaker. As long as there is science, there is hope of survival and well being for all of us.

2. Why did the scientists meet at Geneva? What conclusion did they come to?

- Ans.: After the Second World War the U.S.A., U.S.S.R and U.K. became powerful countries in the world. Each of these nations had nuclear bombs. Within minutes the world could be destroyed. In order to save themselves the super powers were willing to come to an agreement of putting a ban on the nuclear weapon tests. But there was a doubt about violating this treaty. Therefore, a number of scientists all over the world met at Geneva to save the world from danger. They arrived at a decision which resulted in the formulation of Nuclear Text Ban.
- 3. 'Iron Curtain' is referred as a barrier. It was outwardly difficult for the opposite sides of the iron curtain to find out the solution for the problem of violation of agreement. What was the reason?
- Ans. A cold war was going on the atmosphere. There were political tensions as well and at that moment it was expected from scientists and engineers to find out the solution for the problem of violation of agreement which was impossible. It was because everyone had a different cultural background. They were able to work out a common language by expertise but still the cold war and the political tensions did not allow them to break the Iron Curtain

## OFF TO OUTER SPACE TOMORROW MORNING

### FILL IN THE BLANK :

**1.** The speaker is flying out of earth with the feeling of...... Ans. doubt about his return.

2. The expression" winter under lock" means that in space......

Ans there is no change of seasons.

3. The tune of the poem is one of the .....

Ans.humour

**4.** tracking through your telescope my upward shooting star. Here shoting star refers to .... Ans. spaceship

5. the astronaut will be alone as long as he is in the space, which made poet feel as Ans. he is in prisoner

### ANSWER IN TWO OR THREE SENTENCE EACH.

1. As the astronaut is flying out of the earth he has doubts about his return. How does he conveythis?

Ans. He says that people of the earth could start the count down and take a last look at him. they could cross out his name from their telephone book. This shows there their doubt about returning.

2. The poet says "calendar and clocks" are useless in space. give reason.

Ans. In space, there would be no day and night and there would be no seasons. So there would be no need for any calendar or clock.

3. The speaker has the feeling that he is imprisoned. Why did poet feel like this?

Ans. The poet would be alone in his capsule. Nobody would visit him or talk with him. He would not write or receive any letter. So he was in like solitary confinement.

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

66

- 4. The speaker says, 'Tea cups circling around me like planet around the sun'. Why does it happen only in space and not on the earth?
- Ans. On the earth there is a force of gravity, so things don't fly. In space there is no force of gravity, so things are circling around.
- 5. How would people on the earth watch astronaut? Would it affect him in any way?
- Ans. People on the earth watch the astronaut on television or track him through their telescope. But the astronaut would not care any of this .he would be in his own world in space.
- 6. Give some instances of daily routine mentioned in the poem?
- Ans. Daily routine mentioned in the poem are writing mail, posting mail, people visiting others, milkman knocking door in the morning. In the space the speaker cant do all in the space as he is alone in space.

#### **EXTRACTS** :

- There won't be any calendar, there won't be any clock Day light will be on the switch and winter under lock.

   a. Where is the speaker experiencing this? Ans. Space
   b. Why will be no calendar and clock in space? Ans- There is no concept of time while flying through space. So there are no calendars or clocks.
   c. What does 'winter under lock, mean? Ans- there is no seasons
- 2. for nobody to visit me not a friend in hail In solitary confinement as complete as any goal.
  a. What meaning do these lines convey? Ans. He was suffered with loneliness
  b. Why do you think the speaker would have this feeling? Ans. In space no communication happened with friends there is total silence.
  C. what does solitary confinement mean? Ans. Alone in imprisonment
- 3. With the tea cup circling around me like the planets round the sun. I will be centre of gravity, a universe of one.

a. Where would be the speaker experience this? Ans – in space b. Why would he feel so? Ans- there is no

Ans- there is no gravity Ans- there is gravitation power on the earth.

- c.Why doesn't it happen on the earth.? Ans- there is gravitation power on the earth.
  4. Tracking through your telescope any up word shooting star, but you needn't think I'll give a damn for or what you are?
  - a. How do people track astronauts?b. does it make any effect on him?
- Ans- Through telescope and on television Ans- no
- c. What is the meaning of the line?

Ans- he doesn't have any time to think about people on earth.

#### SUMMARY :

The poem outer space tomorroe morning tells the feeelings of an astronaunt who is ready to go to the outer space. he feels quite happy for his journey to the space. He imagines that people delet his name from his contacts in the cell because he imagines doubt on his safe return. he knows that there would be any cloks or calender in the space because there is no day and nights happen and no seasons, he can sleep or wake up according to his wish. There would be no communications, friends, writing letter, posting letters and his daily routines, so He feels himself in the solitary cofinement. when journey starts to the space the gravitation force of the earth reduces and teacups cerculing around him like planets. he says thaeveryone track his fight on T V, through teliscope, but he doesn't have much time to think about people on the earth.

## **1. NARAYANPUR INCIDENT**

- 1. Why were the students marching in the street? Why was it termed uncommon?
- Ans. The students were marching to give a notice to the collector, for the Britishto quit India. It was uncommon because they walked silently without shouting slogans or behaving in a violent manner. Even though there were policemen, they marched as if the policemen didn't exist.
- 2. Canyou guess what the police officer had been talking to the student leaders?
- Ans. The students met the D.S.P. and one of them handed him a piece of paper. The Police Officer didn't even glance at it. This shows that he might have advised them to go back. He might have told them to stop their agitation.
- 3. Babu and Manju were a bit disappointed with the way students were marching.What was the reason?
- Ans. The students marched back to their homes silently and Manju and Babuthought that the students were scared of the police. According to them, the students should have protested. Hence, they were disappointed.
- protested. Hence, they were disappointed.
  4. What had the police expected about the way of protest? How did the student leaders manage the protest?
- Ans. The police expected the students to shout slogans and cause violence. This would make the police to arrest them, beat them up and imprison them. But the students leaders did not want to be arrested then, as they had a lot more to do. Therefore, they marched back silently.
- 5. What was there in the 'mysterious parcel'? What suspicion did the police have about that?
- Ans. The 'mysterious parcel' contained a 'cyclostyle machine'. The police suspected that Mohan and his family were making copies of Mahatma's speech. They also suspected that some people were hiding these.
- 6. Why had Patil, the sub inspector come to Mohan's house? Who believed him? What was the result?
- Ans. Patil the sub-inspector came to Mohan's house to give a warning about theraid of his wife. As he was a close friend of Mohan's father, he asked Mohan togive him the cyclostyle machine and all proof pertaining to the agitation against British. Mohan's mother believed him and allowed him to take away all these things.
- 7. How do you know that Mohan's mother was supportive of their struggle?
- Ans. When Suman and their friend brought the cyclostyle machine, she asked them to keep it in the Puja room. When the sub Inspector came in initially, she acted as if everything was normal and nothing revolutionary took place at their home.
- 8. What do you think is the writer of the incident trying to impress upon the readers? readers?
- Ans. People wanted to fight against the British and get freedom. Some Indianswere working for the British but they were waiting for them to quit India. Thesepeople helped the freedom fighters secretly. The sub-Inspector Patil also indirectly helped Mohan's family

### 2. ON TOP OF THE WORLD

- 1. What were the hardships faced by Dicky Dolma in her childhood? Or Dicky Dolma's life as a girl was sorrowful? What effect did it make on her life?
- Ans: Dicky Dolma lost her mother when she was just 11.She also lost herbrother.These experiences had a profound impact on her life.

2. What was Dicky Dolma fascinated by since her childhood? Why?

Ans: Dicky Dolma fascinated by the grandeur of the snow-clad peaks of theHimalayas

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

since her childhood.Her native place Palchan was surrounded by mountain peaks. And she was also interested in skiing.

- 3. How did Dicky Dolma prepare herself for her venture?
- Ans: Dicky Dolma prepared herself for the venture of scaling The Mt.Everest by joining the newly-opened mountaineering institute in Manali.She took up thebasic training at the institute and worked with dedication and determination. Shegot 'A'grades and was selected by the All-India expedition to Mount Everest.
- 4. What was the dream of Dicky Dolma? When did her dream come true? What was her achievement?
- Ans. The dream of Dicky Dolma was to scale the snow-covered Himalayas. Her dream came true when her name was cleared by An all-India expedition to Mount Everest. She climbed the Mt. Everest on 10h May, 1993 and became the youngest woman in the world to have the achievement of scaling the world's highest peak.
- 5. How did Dicky Dolma feel when she climbed the Mt.Everest?
- Ans. Dicky Dolma could not describe the sight of Mt.Everest.She had never' imagined the beauty of Mt.Everest.She felt that all the state awards and national awards are nothing when compared to the experiences of seeing the sight of Mt.Everest.
- 6. What factors encouraged Dolma to take up basic mountaineering course?
- Ans. Dolma came to know that a mountaineering institute was set up at Manaliand it would give training to those who were interested in climbing mountains. Her friends and her family members also encouraged her to join this course. the Himalayas. Her home, in Palchan was surrounded by beautiful mountain
- 7. Dolma says, "It is not a difficult decision for me to take up the challenge of the lofty mountains" Why does she say so?
- Ans. From her childhood, Dolma had been fascinated by the grandeur of the snow clad peaks of the Himalayas. Her home, in Palchan was surrounded by beautiful mountain peaks.
- 9. How has Dolma described her preparedness for the task of scaling Mount Everest?
- Ans. Dolma got training in the mountaineering institute at Manali. Herd etermination and hard work helped her to secure 'A' grades. She believed that success always follow dedication, determination and hard work. She used to practicelour hours every day before the task of scaling Mount Everest
- **10.** What was the biggest headache that Dolma had to face besides her physicaland mental problem? Ans. Dolma's father was bedridden. She was not financially sound and she needed alot of
- money for her father's treatment, so the family had very little to offer her.
- 11. What does Dolma say about mountaineering after she returns from Mount Everest?
- Ans. "Mountaineering" is a tough sport. This thought never comes to me. It is myzeal for the work. Seeing peaks is a second nature to me. I have never been scaredwhen it comes to hard work", says Dolma.
- 12. What does Dolma say about the view from the top of Mount Everest?
- Ans. Dolma said that an Everest can feel and understand but cannot be described inwords. It was much breath taking that she could ever be imagined. The awards that she had bestowed stand very low before the view from the above.
- 13. What can we learn from Dolma's life?
- Ans. whenever hurdles come, we must face them boldly. Dolma's determination and hard work, Zealfor the work" is emulating.
- 14. How could Dicky Dolma achieve the great feat even with her hardships?
- Ans. Dicky Dolma never felt mountaineering a tough sport. She had zeal forwork. She was determined and sincere in bearing the responsibilities. She knew that success follows the hard work and dedication from her earlier hardships of life.

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

#### 15. How did Dicky Dolma came over her problems?

- Ans. When she was getting ready for Mountaineering of Mt.Everest, her father was bed ridden and a lot of money was needed for his treatment. So the family had very little to offer her.But her determination never allowed her to leave the sport.
- 16. Mention the hobbies of Dicky Dolma.
- Ans. Besides mountaineering Dicky Dolma love to listen to music, especially old Hindi film songs. She is teaching mountaineering at the Mountaineering Institute atMan

### **3. A GREAT MARTYR EVER CHERISHED**

- 1. The writer speaks of the 'smile'that welcomes anyone who enters Hanif's house. What more do we know about this 'smile'?
- Ans. The smile of Hanifuddin just from the photograph frame welcomes anyonewho enters Hanif's house. This smile gives the memory of a twenty-five year oldmartyr lieutenant Hanifuddin.
- 2. What did Hanif choose as his mission? Why did he do so?
- Ans. Hanifuddin chose to join the army. Because he knew that life was short forhim and to serve India In army was his mission.
- 3. Life for Hanif in the beginning was never a smooth sail. Why was it so?
- Ans. Because Hanif lost his father when he was just eight. His mother Hema Azizwas left to take care of three young boys. But she had to leave the children aloneand travel with the performance team of the Information and Broadcasting Ministry
- 4. The absence of mother from home taught the children something.what was that?
- Ans. The absence of mother from home taught the children something that madethe children to become very responsible, getting up and getting ready for school without having to tell them. It gave the children a message that one's duty is the most important thing in life.
- 5. How does the writer describe the'introvert'Hanif?
- Ans. An 'introvert' Hanif began to make friends only by the time he was 14 years of age. He would often go out of his way to help people because that gave him acertain kind of joy.
- 6. Hanif was a young man with varied talents and interest.Illustrate thisstatement from textual examples.
- Ans. Hanif was dabbled in art, sketched very well, made beautiful cards out ofwaste material, read a great deal and loved playing the drums. That is why the officers at Raj Rifals made him get all his instruments from Delhi and form the music group'Hanif 7'
- 7. What did Hanif chose as his mission? Why did he do so?
- Ans. Hanif knew that life for him was short; he wanted to serve the nation. Therefore he joined Indian Army as a soldier. He believed that a person working for the nation could change lives.
- 9. Life for Hanif in the beginning was never a smooth sail. Why was it so?
- Ans. Hanif lost his father when he was just eight years old. His mother a vocal artiste, was out very often with the performance wing. Therefore he became very responsible at a tender age.

10. The absence of mother from home taught the children something. Whatwas that?

- Ans. Hanif s mother a vocal artiste, would often had to leave the children alone:as she travelled with the performance wing. The kids became very responsible getting up and getting ready for school without her having told them and leant that one's duty is the most important thing in life.
- 11. Share your thoughts and impression of Hanif with your classmates.

Ans. Hanif even though he lived only for 25 years, continues to live forever in our hearts. In

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

his short life span he became a hero by sacrificing himself in the Kargil war. Because of the hardships from a tender age, he learnt that one's duty is the most important thing in life. He often went out of his way to help people and this gave him happiness. He was a young man of varied talents and interest. Life for Hanif was always 'ekdam bindas'

#### 12. What were the dreams of Hanif? Do you think they were fulfilled?

Ans. Haniff had dreamt that he would rise up the ranks. This dream could notbe fulfilled because he was killed in the Kargil war. His another dream was thata post be named after him. Those dream scame true when the sub-sector was named after him.

### **4. THE BIRD OF HAPPINESS**)

Answer the following questions in 4 or 5 sentences each.

- 1. What did the people in the poor area in Tibet suffer from OR How can you say that the people in the poor area of Tibet were unhappy?
- Ans. The poor area had no rivers or good land, no warmth or fresh flowers, no trees or green grass. The people suffered from hunger and cold all year round. so they were unhappy.
- 2. What did the old folk of Tibet say about happiness?
- Ans. The old folk used to say that happiness was a beautiful bird. It lived far away, on a snowy mountain in the east. wherever the bird flew, happiness went with it.
- 3. "Will lever make it?" Why did Wangjia feel so?
- Ans. In anger, the first monster blew through his beard and the smooth road became a vast scree. Every stone on it was as sharp as a knife. As Wangjia walked on it his boots got torn. His feet got cut. His hands were torn to pieces. The journey was very tough. So, he thought if he would ever make it.
- 4. How was Wangjia made to suffer by the second monster?
- Ans. The second monster blew through his beard. His bread bag flew into the sky. The blue mountains and green rivers turned into a desert. Wangjia suffered with no food. At first his stomach rumbled with hunger, his head swam and got sharp pain in his guts.
  5. What changes came over Wangjia as the Bind of Happiness caressed him?
- Ans. As the bind of Happiness caressed Wangjia, his eyeballs flew back to their sockets, he saw much more brightly than before. All his wounds were healed and he was stronger than ever.
- 6. Why did Wangjia decide not to go back?
- Ans. Though the journey was very tough, Wangjia decided not to go back. He knew that the people at home were waiting for him to bring back happiness.
- 7. What did the third monster warn Wangjia?
- Ans. The third monster warned wangia that if he wanted to see the bind of Happiness. He would bring Bhimas eyeball If he failed, the monster, would gouge out wangjia's eye balls. **Will lever make it?"Why did Wangjia feel so?**
- Ans. When Wangjia started his journey after the first monster made him walk through the vast scree for nine hundred miles. his hands and feet were torn into pieces. Then he felt that he could not continue his journey.
- 9. What do you understand by happiness after reading the story 'The Bird of Happiness'?
- Ans one can be happy if there are rivers, forests, flowers, fields, warmth and trees. That is the real happiness lies in the happiness of all. so everyone should work for the happiness of all to be him/herself to be happy
- happiness of all to be him/herself to be happy
  10. What do you like the most in the story "The Bird of Happiness"? Support your answer giving reasons.
- Ans. I like the moral of the story and Wangjia's unselfish nature. One can be happy if there are rivers, forests, flowers, fields, warmth and trees. That is the real happiness lies in the happiness of all. So everyone should work for the happiness of all to be him/ herself to be happy.

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

#### 11. What hardships did Wangjia undergo on his way to find the bird of happiness?

Ans. Wangjia came across three monsters on his way. The first monster changed the smooth road into a vast scree. walking on this, Wangjia's boots got torn, his feet were cut and hands were torn to shreds. The second monster turned everything into a desert. He had no food at all. As a result, he suffered great pain in his stomach and become so thin.. When the third monster blew through his beard Wangjia's eyeballs jumped out of their sockets and he became blind. He groped the way for 900 miles. Finally after that suffering Wangjia found the Bird of happiness on the white snowy mountain.

12. How did the Bird of Happiness put an end to the hardships suffered by the people?

- Ans the bird sat on the mountain top, the Bind of Happiness gave three loud cries. At the first cry, a golden sun appeared through the clouds and a warm breeze to blow. At the second cry, the mountains were covered with forests, flowers began to bloom and birds began to sing. At the third cry, green fields and rivers appeared and white rabbits danced happily on the grass. From that day on, the people never suffered
- 13. Wangjia was face to face with three monsters. Each monster had his own wish. What contrast do you draw between the wishes of the monsters and wish of Wangjia?
- Ans. On the way Wangjia meets three monsters. Each of the monsters wanted Wangjia to performan evil deed in order to reach the bird. The first monster wanted him to kill Lousang's mother. The second monster wanted to poison the old man, Silong. The third monster wanted him to bring back Bhima's eyeballs. Wangjia wished to make the people of his land happy. He suffered a lot but did not follow the evil path. He proved that good always wins over the bad



#### 1. OPPOSITE WORDS

1. Difficult X Easy	2. Full X Empty	<ol><li>Broad X Narrow</li></ol>	4. Kind X Cruel / Unkind
5. Lose X Gain	6. Life X Death	<ol><li>Dirty X Clean</li></ol>	8. Weak X Strong
9. Reward X Punishment	10. Soft X Hard	11. Bold X Timid (coward)	12. Laugh X Weep
13. Arrive X Depart	14. Arrival X departure	15. Same X Different	16. Long X Short
17. Slow X Fast	18. Accept X Reject/Refuse	19. Young X old	20. True X False
21. Right X Wrong	22. Rich X poor	23.Brave X Timid	24. Encourage x Discourage
25. Patriot X Traitor	26. Triumph X Defeat	27.Superior X Inferior	28. Intelligent X Dull
29. Always X Never	30. Demolish X Construct	31. Success X Failure	32. Careful X Careless
33. Sweet X bitter	34. High X Low	35. Wise X Foolish	36. Presence X absence
37. Help X Hinder	38. Ignorant X Intelligent	39. Clever X fool	40. Mighty X Weak
41. Useful X Useless	42. Permanent X Temporary	/43. Proud X Humble	44. Quick X Slow
45. Lenient X Strict	46. Heavy X Light	47. More X Less	48. Remember X Forget
49. Safe X Unsafe/Dangerous	50. Certain X Uncertain	51. below X Above	52. Reprimand X Praise
53. Achievement X Failure	54. Profit X Loss	55. Initially X Finally	56. Serious X Casual
57. Great X Silly	58. Grieving X Enjoying	59. Bitter X Sweet	60. Strong X Weak (feeble)
61. Mighty X Feeble	62. Miser X Generous	63. Come X Go	64. Tell X Ask
65. Buy X Sell	66. Right X Wrong	67. Right X Left	68. Remember X Forget
69. Give X Take	70.Master X Servant	71. Master X Student	73. Big X Small
74. Vanish X Appear	75. Glad X Grieve	76. Fast X Slow	77. Superiority X Inferiority
78. First X Last	79. Dream X Realize	80. Alive X Dead	81. Celebrate X Mourn
82. Affluent X Poor	83. Generous X Miser	84. Good X Bad	85. High X Low
86. Active X Passive	87. Outer X Inner	88. Famous X Notorious	89. Best X Worst
82. Affluent X Poor	83. Generous X Miser	84. Good X Bad	85. High X Low

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

90. Stronger X Weaker 91. Special X Ordinary 92. Silly X Great 94. Attack X Defend 95. Heavy X Light 96. Defeat X Victory (win) 98. Reward X Insult 99. Aristocrati X poor **100.** Generosity X Miserliness 103. Won X Lost 104. AcknowledgeXReject 102. Dry X Wet 108. Patriot X Traitor 106. Lady X Gentleman 107. Hard X Soft 110. Silent X Aggressive 111. Mean X Great 112. Brave X Coward 114. Happy X Unhappy 115. Quit X Join 118. Full X Empty 119. Notice X Ignore 120. Poverty X Richness 122. Empty X Full 123. Clever X Foolish 126. Charming 127. Ever X Never 130. Save X Spend 131. Cool X Hot 132. Frown X Smil 135. Leader X Follower 136. Former X Later 134. More X Less 138. Ancient X Modern 139. Powerful X Powerless 140. Quickly X Slowly 141. Interesting X Boring 142. Begin X End 143. Suffer X Enjoy 144. Open X Close 146. Appeal X Command147. Request X Order 150. Expand X Contract 151. Fastest X Slowest 152. Highest X Lowest 153. Feat X Failure 154. Easy X Difficult 155. Mighty X Feeble 158. Never X Always 159. Wrong X Right 160. Friend X Enemy

93. Together X Singly 97. Proud X Humble 101. Oblige X Refuse 105. Widow X Widower 109. Less X More 113. Glad X Sad 116. Present X Absent 117. Stop X Allow 121. Foolish X Wise 124. Order X Request 125. Beautiful X Ugly 128. Prolific X Barren 129. Open X Close 133. Bud X Flower 137. New X Old 145. Large X Small 148. Strength X Weakness 149. Increase X Decrease 156. Native X Foreign 157. Tough X Smooth

#### Prefixes

- In
- 1. ability X inability 2. material X immaterial 2. accurate X inaccurate 3. active X inactive 4. adequate X inadequate 5. animate X inanimate 6. applicable X inapplicable 7. appropriate X inappropriate 8. capable X in capable 9. comparable X incomparable 10. complete X incomplete 11. consistent X inconsistent 12. convenience X inconvenience 13. correct X incorrect 14. decent X indecent 15. discipline X indiscipline 16. definite X indefinite 17. direct X indirect 18. divisible X indivisible 19. effective X ineffective 20. equal X inequal 21. expensive X inexpensive 22. sufficient X insufficient 23. valid X invalid 24. visible X invisible 25.glorious X inglorious 26. gratitude X ingratitude 27. human X inhuman

#### IM

- 1. balance X imbalance
- 2. material X immaterial
- 3. mature X immature
- 4. measurable X immeasurable
- 5. memorial X immemorial
- 6. mobile X immobile
- 7. mobilize X immobilize
- 8. mortal X immortal
- 9. modest X immodest
- 10. moral X immoral
- 11. movable X immovable
- 12. mutable X immutable
- 13. partial X impartial
- 14. patient X impatient
- 15. perfect X imperfect
- 16. perfection X imperfection
- 17. Permanent X Impermanent
- 18. personal X impersonal
- 19. possible X impossible
- 20. polite X impolite
- 21. probable X improbable
- 22. precise X imprecise
- 23. proper X improper
- 24. pure X impure

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

73

DIS 1. advantage X disadvantage 4. appear X disappear 7. comfort X discomfort 10. count X discount 13. honour X dishonour 16. loyal X disloyal 19. place X displace 22. respect X disrespect UN	<ol> <li>2. agree X disagree</li> <li>5. approve X disapprove</li> <li>8. connect X disconnect</li> <li>11. harmony X disharmony</li> <li>14. interest X disinterest</li> <li>17. obedient X disobedient</li> <li>20. integrate X disintegrate</li> <li>23. satisfy X dissatisfy</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>allow X disallow</li> <li>believe X disbelieve</li> <li>continue X discontinue</li> <li>honest X dishonest</li> <li>like X dislike</li> <li>obey X disobey</li> <li>please X displease</li> <li>similar X dissimilar</li> </ol>
<ol> <li>known X unknown</li> <li>comfortable X uncomfortable</li> <li>even X uneven</li> <li>fortunate X unfortunate</li> <li>healthy X unhealthy</li> <li>pleasant X unpleasant</li> <li>popular X unpopular</li> <li>successful X unsuccessful</li> <li>selfish X unselfish</li> <li>tidy X untidy</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>certain X uncertain</li> <li>common X uncommon</li> <li>fit X unfit</li> <li>grateful X ungrateful</li> <li>important X unimportant</li> <li>reliable X unreliable</li> <li>load X unload</li> <li>natural X unnatural</li> <li>touchable X untouchable</li> <li>usual X unusual</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>3. clean X unclean</li> <li>6. employment X unemployment</li> <li>9. faithful X unfaithful</li> <li>12. happy X unhappy</li> <li>15. lucky X unlucky</li> <li>18. satisfactory X unsatisfactory</li> <li>21. heard X unheard</li> <li>24. necessary X unnecessary</li> <li>27. worthy X unworthy</li> <li>30.well X unwe</li> </ol>
<ol> <li>1. rational X irrational</li> <li>4. relevant X irrelevant</li> <li>7. reversible X irreversible</li> <li>MIS</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>regular X irregular</li> <li>resolute X irresolute</li> <li>religious X irreligious</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>repairable X irreparable</li> <li>responsible X irresponsible</li> </ol>
<ol> <li>behave X misbehave</li> <li>conduct X misconduct</li> <li>handle X mishandle</li> <li>place X misplace</li> <li>manage X mismanage</li> <li>trust X mistrust</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>2. calculate X miscalculate</li> <li>5. fortune X misfortune</li> <li>8. judge X misjudge</li> <li>11. spell X misspell</li> <li>14. print X misprint</li> <li>17. use X misuse</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>chance X mischance</li> <li>guide X misguide</li> <li>lead X mislead</li> <li>spelt X misspelt</li> <li>understand Xmisunderstand</li> </ol>
<ol> <li>health X ill health</li> <li>legible X illegible</li> <li>logical X illogical</li> <li>Non</li> </ol>	2. favour X illfavour 5. liberal X illiberal	3. legal X illegal 6. literate X illiterate
<ol> <li>sense X nonsense</li> <li>flammable X nonflammable</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>2. stick X nonstick</li> <li>5. vegetarian X nonvegetarian</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>stop X nonstop</li> <li>controversial X noncontroversial</li> </ol>

### **HOMOPHONES**

# Two or more words having similar pronunciation but different spelling and meaning are called Homophones : Point out the difference in meaning between the pair of words.

- Too = I eat sweets. I eat fruits too. Two =I have two eyes. 1) To =I go to Mysore.
- Right = This is my right hand. / My answer is right. Write = I write poems. 2) Rite =We perform final rites.

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

74

3)	Principal = Chandrashekar is our principal.	Principle=He has good principles.
4)	Pray = I pray God everyday.	Prey = He lion got its prey.
5)	Week = Seven days make a week.	Weak = You are very weak.
6)	Adopt =Lakshmibai adopted a child. Adept = Sachin is an adapt in batting	Adapt =Birds are adapted for flying.
7)	Rome =Rome is a city.	Roam = Don't roam in the city.
7) 8)		
0)	Accept = Vivekananda accepted Sri R Except = I like all fruits except orange.	
9)	Advice = It is a good advice.	Advise = The docter advised not to eat oily food.
10)	Practice = Praclice makes one perfect.	Practise = Practice well for exams.
	Effect = The effect of the flood was very bad.	Affect = The flood affected the people of Karnataka.
	Hair=My hair is black.	Heir =Tippusultan was the heir of Hyderali.
,	Hare =The hare lives in the forest.	
13)	Been =( Be- participle from) I had been	n to Mysore. Bean = I eat beans.
	Be $(verb - is) = I$ want to be a doctor.	Bee – The bee is an insect.
	Brake = Please apply the brake.	Break =Don't break benches.
	Bear = The bear is an animal.	Beer = Don't drink beer.
,	Blue =The sky is blue.	Blew (past form of blow)=Krishna blew his flute.
	Knew (past of know)= I knew English.	
	Idol = This is an idol.	Idle = Don't sit idle. Ideal =I am an ideal student.
20)́	Bridal =The bridal dress is costly.	Bridle =The bridle is soft.
	Buy =I buy a scooter.	By (prep)=Ravana was killed by Rama.
,	Cell = The cell is the unit of life.	Sell = Sell your car
,	Shell = The sea shell is beautiful.	
23)	Cereals =We eat cereals.	Serial = I watch serials. / My serial number is 25.
	Dairy = We buy milk in the dairy.	Diary =I write my diary.
	Deer =This is a dear.	Dear =You are my dear brother
	Die =The dove died.	Dye =Dye the white shirt.
	Fair =This is a fair. / This is not fair.	Fare =The bus fare is costly.
,	Fire = Don't fire crackers.	,
28)	Feat =It is a great feat.	Feet (plural of foot) I am five feet
,	Won =India won the match.	One = I need one day leave.
30)	Wait = Don't wait for me.	Weight =My weight is 60 kgs.
,	Waist = Don't touch my wai	
,	•	IOMOPHONES
A.	Fill in the blanks with appropriate w	
1.	We had many apples	to carry.(to/too/two)
2.	Ia horse at the Marina be	
2	Did you have a for lunch 20	naro/nair)

- 3.
- Did you have a \_\_\_\_\_ The books are over\_\_ \_for lunch?(pare/pair) \_\_\_\_on the shelf.(their/there) 4.
- B. Fill in the blanks with a suitable homophone and a complete the story.

This is a	(storey/story) told by a	_(night/knight).Once he received
letter.When he	(red/read)it	(through/threw),he could not
believe his own eyes		(buy/by)none other than
the queen of the land	d.She asked him to meet her	(at/yet) a secret place.The

75

	problem.He	fix.But he thought(of/off) a pla (vent/went) to the meeting place,not a r/fare)wife.Can you guess what happened th	alone,but along with
C.	Complete the s	tence by using a suitable word in the br	acket:
1.	Once a w	to meet our Chief minister S.M.Kri	shna (former/farmer)
2.	Raiu and I went	a shop todressesa car.(b d a movie.I alreadythe story from	ov/buv)
3.	Yesterday I wate	d a movie l already the story from	n my brother. So it did
	not seem	me. (new/knew)	
4		scene of Sunset at Agumbe many times in	my life.
		COLLOCATIVE WORDS	
	A Book long earth	В	
1.	Book	worm, ant, hand, pen	
2.	long	small, hen, run, food	
3	earth	land water quake sun	
4.	railway	station chair run ston	
 5.	nost	book box naner table	
6.	honey	moon sun star earth	
7.	wall	station, chair, run, stop book, box, paper, table moon, sun, star, earth door, table, clock, journey post, water, book, bank studio, table, lady, man	
7. 8.	blood	nost water book bank	
9.	nhoto	studio table lady man	
10	money	coins, letter, stamps, order	
11	charming	airl bot answer book	
12	charming	discipline, myself, mother, Stars	
13	wheel	coins, letter, stamps, order girl, hot, answer, book discipline, myself, mother, Stars stool, paper, book, chair nurse, conductor, constable, stand pants, sari, socks, kerchief stars, moon, sun, earth lunch, dinner, fast, last fighter, boxer, wrestler, swimmer answer, question, letter, box run walk, sing, dance leg, mouth, hands, eye talking, eating, watering, licking land, weapon, bottle, bolt	
14	police	nurse, conductor, constable, stand	
15	hand	pants sari socks kerchief	
16.	twinkling	stars, moon, sun, earth	
17.	break	lunch, dinner, fast, last	
18.	freedom	fighter, boxer, wrestler, swimmer	
19.	leave	answer, question, letter, box	
20.	brisk	run walk, sing, dance	
21.	shake	leg, mouth, hands, eye	
22.	mouth	talking, eating, watering, licking	
24.	speedy	recovery, damage, task, time	
5.	The spelling of	word is jumbled writhe the word	
olyl	a – loyal	ggrade – ragged dede – deed ba areg – rage rcawl – crawl ob ftalret – flatter lgisetn – glisten Iga	loed – abode
now	/ — own	areg – rage rcawl – crawl ob	thre – bother
flitre	e – trifle	ftalret – flatter lgisetn – glisten lga	aem – gleam
	cou – tremour	asoce – solace zoed – doze lbs	ssening – blessing
	udi – stupid	odutb – doubt sotaliry – solitary go	
are	g – rage		aitbion – ambition
	nmm – summon	egare – eager fare – fear be	onck – beckon
rpe	ytt - pretty		
	ick out the righ		Anciput off
1. 2.		due to heavy rain. (put off/put out) the statue. (flew over/flew on)	Ans:put off Ans: flew over
2. 3.	Many soldiors	the war. (died of/died in)	Ans: died in
3. 4.			Ans:died of
4. 5.		what the student had written. (make up/make out)	Ans:make out
0.		mat the station had written. (make up/make but)	

76

6. 7. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14.	Ramu his mind to study hard. (made up/made out) The crowd to the chief guest. (gave away/gave way) Smita was the lost book. (looking into/looking for) Mother advised Neha to junk food. (give up/give in) Don't others for help. (depend at/depend on) Happy man was what he had. (contented with/contented at) Akbar his uniform and rushed hurriedly.(put on/put out) Jaya walk to school daily. (used for/used to) We should not upon the old people. (look down at/look down)	Ans:depend on Ans:contented with Ans:put on Ans:used to
7.	Fill in the blanks with appropriate form of the word given	in brackets:
1	A son wasto the king and his was celebrated throughou Ans: born, birth	It the kingdom. (borrn)
2 3 4 5 6 7	Police the thief but his was not answered. (question) Ans Edison bulb and his is used throughout the world. (invent) Ans Some people that their are always right. (think) Don Anselmo to sign the (agree) Ans Air everywhere but its cannot be seen. (exist) Ans: Doctors patients to exercise regularly though most of their are Ans :suggest, suggestions	s: invented, invention Ans: think, thoughts : agreed, agreement exists, existence not followed. (suggest)
8	letter was posted to the candidate. (appoint) Ans: ap	
9.	James huge amount in dairy farming. Hiswent down the	
	most of the cows died of disease. (invest) Ans: invested, invest	
10.	Doctor the patient and sent his report to his senior.(exam) Ans:	examined, examination
	rcise for practice :	
14) 15) 16) 18) 19) 20) 21) 23) 24)	India is a	e news secret(success) n(intelligent) r(develop) e) (confuse) i (excel) (truth) (decide)
	1) Developing 2) hounourable 3) interesting 4) successful 5) int 7) necessarily 8) confidence 9) beautifully 10) intelligently 11) ec 13) development 14) educated 15) dependence 16) difference cellence 19) developmental 20) Dependable 21) Satisfactorily 22) 24) Simpleton 25) Decision	ducation 12) beautiful 17) confusion 18) ex-
	24) Simpleton 25) Decision.	

### READING

### Read the following passages and answer the questions that follow:

- Homework has historically been given to students to reinforce what they learn at school, and ultimately to help them learn the material better. However, too much homework is not helpful, and can be counter-productive. Excessive amount of time spent on completing homework can take away the kid's social life, family time, and it limits their participation in sports or other activities. The amount of homework a teacher has to give to a student should be restricted.
  - a. Why is homework given to students?
  - b. "Too much homework can be counter" productive. How?
  - c. What is to be restricted?
  - d. What do kids lose, by doing homework?
- 2. You must have heard about the Hussain Sagar Lake. It is in Hyderabad. It is one of the largest man-made lakes. Hyderabad and Secunderabad are the twin cities of the state. The lake connects these cities. It was originally constructed to supply drinking water. Now it is not used as a drinking water source. People say, "This is sad. There is plenty of water. Nobody can drink it". The lake faces a few threats. The main threat is encroachment by both private and public agencies. The lake also faces the problem of pollution. One of the locals said: "oh, sometimes it stinks horribly". This is due to the continuous discharge of domestic wastes and industrial chemicals. Hence it is our duty to save the Hussain Sagar Lake.
  - a. Which are the twin cities connected by Hussain Sagar Lake?
  - b. Why was Hussain Sagar Lake constructed?
  - c. Why do people feel sad?
  - d. How is the lake getting polluted?
- 3. Mark Twain who had earned a reputation as a humour writer got an invitation to address a public meeting. He reached that city on the day of meeting. He felt that his programme had not been sufficiently publicized. There were not many posters either on the city walls or in the area near the railway station. He decided to find out if the citizens had advance knowledge of his programme. So, he went to a shop. He asked at the shop's counter "Brother, is there any interesting programme in the city, where a traveler could spend his evening usefully and relax?" "I think there is some lecture in the evening" the shop keeper replied in a comforting tone. "On what basis, have you made this guess?" asked mark Twain. "I will tell you that, today we have had a tremendous sale of eggs" said the shopkeeper and busied himself in work.

a.What made mark think that his programme had not been given enough publicity? b.Which words/phrase in the passage say that the shop-keeper did not have definite information about the meeting?

c. How did mark Twain try to find out whether his programme has been published properly? d.How did the shopkeeper guess that there was a lecture?

4. Once there was a slave. His name was Andracle. His master was very cruel. he treated him very badly.so, the slave was sick of him and ran away in to a forest. there he saw a tiger crying with pain. The lion sat before him and held out it paw.there was a big thrown in it.the slave drew it out and dressed the wound. they become friends. after a few days, the slave was cought, he was order to be thrown before ahungry

lionmany people came to see the act of cruelty.

A lion was cought for this purpose. it was kept hungry for many days. On the fixed day, the lion was let loose on the slave.it recognised him it began to lick his feet.

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

All the people were siurprised the slave told the whole story. the master was pleased and set Andrecle free. What made Andrecle go to the forest?

- a.
- b. HOw did Andrecle treat the lion?
- What act of cruelty did people go to see? С
- d. Why didn't the lion kill the slave?

### Read the message/conversations and answer the questions that follow:

- 23rd June 2015 2.30 p.m. Mr. Pandit, CEO of Suncity company arriving on 28th of this 1. month. Book a room in Hotel Taj. Arrange for a luxury car. Jaishankar
- When does the CEO arrive? a.
- What has to be arranged for CEO? b.
- 2. 4<sup>th</sup> October 2015, 10.00 a.m.Dear Vinu, Your yoga teacher called to inform you that the voga class today is cancelled. Tomorrow's class will be at 4 p.m. Arunima
- Who had called Vinu? b Why did she make a call? a.
- 7<sup>th</sup> November 2014 4.00 p.m. Sudha, Secretary of BBM company had called. You 3. have to attend the interview for steno's post on 11<sup>th</sup> November sharp at 10 pm at head office of the company. Bharath Rao
- Who has written the message? b.When is the interview? a.
- News reporter : Congratulation Rashmi, your feet is loudable, By the way 4 did you expect first rank in the CET this year?

Rashmi	:	No, I expected to be one in top ten ranks.
News reporter	:	HOw could you achive this?
Rashmi	:	I worked hard from the beginin. My teachers, my college
		librar, my parent were great help to me.

- Why does news paper reported congratulate her? а
- What was the secreat of Rashmi's achievement? h
- 5. Suman : Hello, Can I speak to Arun?
  - Arpitha : I'm afraid Arun is not at home. May I know who is speaking?
  - Suman : I'm Suman. Please tell Arun to meet me near Gandhi Square bus stop at 5 p.m. Who did Suman want to speak to? a.
  - What message did Suman leave for Arun? b.
  - Warden: Can I take the message for Sowmya?
  - Arpitha: Yes, tell Sowmya that her mother will be reaching her school to morrow at 12.30 p.m. and she'll bring her dance costume.
  - Which word in the conversation means 'dress' a.
  - Where do you think Sowmya stayed? b.
- 7. Mrs. Ravindra : Could you leave a message for Saravana. Mr. Naganna :Oh. sure

**Mrs. Ravindra** :Tell him, that he is required for the Sub-Junior tennis tri als to be held on 14<sup>th</sup> November, 2015 in Gangotri Stadium at 10 a.m. Who should go to Gangothri Stadium on November 14th 2015.

- a.
- Why was he asked to go there? b.
- Manasa : Please inform mom that I'll be late today.

### Manoj: Why?

6.

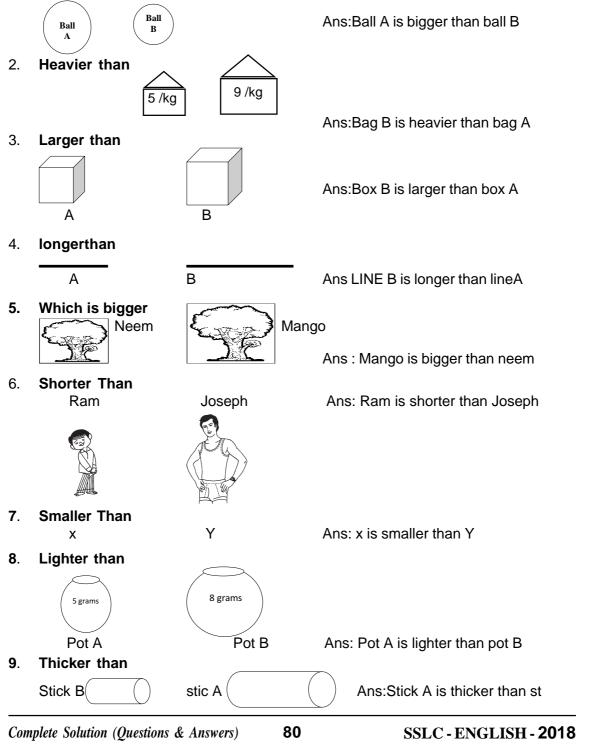
8.

Manasa: I'm going to Varsha's house to complete my project work.

- What message did Manasa leave to her mom? a.
- b. Why was Manasa going to Varsha's house?

### Look at the pictures. Write a sentence using the correct form of word on what you read.

1. Frame a sentence using 'bigger than'



### Re-arrange the jumbled words into a meaningful sentence.

- 1. Radha/Does/film/?/sings/songs
- 2. sight/what/beautiful/a/!/
- 3. your/how/treat/parent s/do/you
- 4. snakes/afraid of/you/are
- 5. the/took/he/deed/the/signed/and/money
- 6. .with/?/do/argument/whose/with/agree
- 7. the/agree/price/you/with/Do?
- 8. poor/Tibet/was/very/area/there/a/in
- 9. so/special/music/about/?/What's
- 10. walking/a/bridge/he/along/was/narrow

## WRITING

Letter Writing

### 1. Official letter

2. Personal letter

### **Official Letter**

- 1 From address 2. Date 3
  - Date
     To address
     Subject
     Body of the letter
     Complimentary ending
- 4. Salutation Format Official Letter
- 1 from address.....
- 2. Date.....
- 3 To address .....
- 4. Solutation.....

.....

- 5 Subject:.....
- 6 Bodyletter.....
- 7 Complimentary ending

### OFFICIAL LETTER

Imagine that you are Shanthi / Shivanna, 10th Std, Govt. high School, Haveri . Write a letter to the Editor of a newspaper about the roads and drainage system in your locality.

### From

Shanthi, 10th standard Govt. High School Haveri Date – 6-1-2016

To,

The Editor, Deccan Herald, Bangalore.

Dear Sir

Respected sir

Subject:- Regarding bad conditions of roads

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

81

SSLC - ENGLISH - 2018

Āns:Does Radha sings film songs? Ans:What a beautiful sight! Ans:How do you treat your patients? Ans:Are you afraid of snakes? Ans:He took the money and signed deed Ans:Whose argument do you agree with? Ans:Do you agree with the price? Ans:There was a poor area in Tibet Ans:What's so special about music? Ans:He was walking along a narrow bridge There are four main roads and ten bye lanes in our village. The roads have not been swept for nearly one month. Flies and mosquitoes have been haunting us. I request you to draw the attention of concerned authorities to get the roads swept without fail. Thank You, Yours faithfully, Shanthi

### **Personal letter**

2

4

6

Date

Body of the letter

To address

### Steps of personal letter

- 1 From address (address of writer)
- 3 Salutations
- 5 Complimentary ending

### Format of personal letter

- 1 From .....
- 2 Date .....
- 3 Solutation.....
- 4 Body of letter .....
- 5 Yours Affectionately / Yours sincerely .....
- 6. To address.....

Imagine that you are Suresh / Sudha Xth standard, Govt High school, Belgaum. Write a letter to your father requesting him to send Rs. 500, for your school Excursion, using the following clues given below:-

From

Suresh / Sudha Xth Standard Govt, High School, Belgaum. Date : - 01-01-2016

Dear Father,

I am fine, How are you? I hope you and mother are also fine.

I am studying well, My teachers are teaching well. I study for six hours a day. We have 15 days holidays. Our school teachers have planned for excursion (tour) to Belur, Halebidu, Mysore, Srirangpatana. They have fixed Rs. 500 for excursion. I want to go on excursion. Please send me Rs. 500/-

Yours Affectionately Suresh.

- Imagine that you are Raju/Rajani Door No. 345, Patel Road, Koppa. Write an application to the General Manager KSRTC requesting for more number of buses to your place.
- 3. Imagine that you are Rajesh/Ravi from Bengaluru Write a letter to your friend telling him/her about the sports day in your school.
- 4. Imagine that you are Prajwal/Pamela of S.K. high School, Bommanahalli Write a letter to your friend inviting him/her to spend this summer holidays in your house.
- 5. Imagine that you are Latha/Lohith of Cambridge high school, Bengaluru Write a letter to the commissioner for the need of more number of public parks in a crowded city like Bengaluru.

82

### Paragraph composing using a profile (example)

Below is a profile of Mr. Ramakrishna the school clerk. Write the information in the form of a paragraph.

age : around 40 years

Height and weight: 6 feet, solid built

Family: small - one male and a female-college -going

Reason for his popularity: helpful, best gardener

Education; B.Com graduate

Hobbies: gardening, bee keeping, coin collection

Mr. Ramakrishna is 40 years old. He is a school clerk. He has solid built physique and six feet tall. He is happy with his small family –wife, a son and a daughter. Both his children are college going .He is a commerce graduate. Gardening, bee keeping and coin collection are some of his hobbies. He is a very popular person in his locality because, he is helpful and soft spoken. He is not only a loving father but also an ideal gentleman among his neighbors. Note: Prepare a boi-sketch of your father/mother. Then write a paragraph based on it.

1. Given below is a profile of Amar the grocer. Write a short biographical sketch of Amar. Take the help of the clues given below

Amar. Take the help of	u	le clues given below
Age	-	45 years,
Height/weight	-	6 feet, well built.
Residence	-	Naganahalli
Family	-	large, three daughters, two sons.
Education	-	high school dropout
Reason for his popularity	-	courteous, kind and honest.

2 Given below is a profile of Shruthi, a teacher in Don Bosco School write a short biographical sketch of Shruti with the help of the clues given below

- 3 Below is a Profile of Sir C V Raman, a scientist. Write the given information in the form of a paragraph.
  - Date of birth 7th November 1888

Father Mother Education	<ul> <li>Chandrashekar Iyer (a professor of Physics)</li> <li>Parvati Amman</li> <li>M A (physics)</li> </ul>
Profession	<ul> <li>Earlier -deputy accountant general , then a professor in Calcutta university</li> </ul>
Aim Achievement Awards Spacial quality	<ul> <li>wanted to be a scientist</li> <li>scattering of light(Raman Effect)</li> <li>Noble prize for his achievement.</li> <li>kind hearted and generous</li> </ul>

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

### **Story writing /Paragraph Writing**

### Hints for writing :

Construction of paragraphs or stories on the given outline is a very good exercise to bring out the student's imagination and capacity to write in simple language.

- 1. While writing the paragraph / story follow the outline given carefully. Do not omit any point. Keep to the order in which the points are given in the outline.
- 2. Be careful to connect the points given in the outline naturally so that the whole willbe read well as a connected piece of good composition. You must use your imagination in filling the details of action, gesture and conversation that should connect one point with the next.
- 3. If you are asked to supply a heading or title to the paragraph or story, you may choose the main character, object or incident of the story or a proverb or well-known quotation that suits the story.
- 4. See that your composition is grammatical, idiomatic and in good simple English. Revise your work, and if necessary, rewrite it until it is as good as you can make it.
- 5. Please do take the help of sentence structures while constructing sentences.

### A FRIEND IN NEED IS A FRIEND INDEED

Once an ant fell into a stream. In vain it tried to catch hold of a leaf or twig to save itself. It was carried along the stream. A dove was watching the ant from the branch of a tree. Out of pity it let fall a leaf into the stream. The ant climbed upon the leaf and was saved. Another day, a hunter took aim at the same dove with his gun. The dove knew nothing about this hunter; but the ant saw him. It knew that the dove was in danger. It quickly came to the hunter and bit his toe. The hunter missed his aim and the dove flew away. That was how the grateful ant did good turn to the kind dove.

### A PERFECTLY HAPPY MAN!

Once a king became seriously ill. The doctors said that he could be well again if he wore the shirt of a perfectly happy man. The king sent his men all over to find a perfectly happy man. They could not find one. After a weary search, they came upon a begger. He was singing. He was laughing. He was perfectly happy. He was brought before the king. The doctors asked him to give his shirt to the king. He laughed and said," I have no shirt at all."

### WHO TO BELL THE CAT?

Once the mice living in a certain house were very much afraid of a cat, for it killed and ate many of them. They held a meeting to decide how to get rid of the nasty cat. One mouse said that they should leave the house. Another said that they should not come out of their holes. Then a young mouse stood up and said, "Why not tie a bell round the cat's neck? We can then hear it coming, and get away easily out of its way." All the mice cheered,"What a good plan!" Now an old mouse stood up and said, "The plan is, no doubt, very good, but who will bell the cat ?" No mouse now came forward to do it. Suddenly the cat appeared and all the mice ran into thier holes.

### THE HIDDEN TREASURE

A farmer had several sons. But they were lazy and would not help him to work in the fields. The famer fell ill. He knew he was dying. So he called all his sons together and told them that they could find all his wealth burried in his fields. The farmer died. His sons at once went to the fields and dug every bit of land, but they found no treasure. They were very sad. Soon the rains fell and, as the earth had been well dug, they sowed the corn. There was a very fine crop that year. The sons now learnt what their father meant by treasure. The treasure could be got only by hard work.

### A FEW EXAMPLES

- A farmer had a goose it laid a golden egg every day gready farmer wanted to more golden eggs at once - thought of a plan - killed the goose - opened its stomach - no golden egg - Moral.
- 2. A slave escaped from bondage to the forest soldiers came after him to catch entered a cave a lion was roaring with pain its paw was swollen the slave approached it and removed the thorn they became friends later the soldiers arrested the slave took him to the king the king ordered the soldiers to throw the slave to the hungry lion the lion rushed at the slave recognised the slave remembered the kindness shown by the slave then licked the feet of the slave the spectators amazed the slave explained the situation to them the king set him free.
- 3. Cap seller going to market felt tired slept under a tree a basket caps for sale monkeys on the tree came down opened the basket took the caps wore them started making noise Cap seller woke up no cap in the basket looked up in wonder monkeys wearing caps tried several methods to collect the caps failed out of frustration threw his cap monkeys also threw the caps Cap seller collected the caps and went aways happily.
- 4. A fox fell into a well a thirsty goat came to the well fox invited the goat to have a drink of fresh water the foolish goat jumped into the well fox tried to step on the goat's back and jumped off promised to draw out goat afterwards the goat agreed the fox went away foolish goat stayed there.
- 5. A hungry fox saw a crow with a piece of meat in its beak. Fox thought of a plan praised the crow the crow listened felt very happy fox requested the crow to sing a song foolish crow very pleased began to sing the piece of meat fell down Fox picked up ran away .
- A wood cutter cutting wood dropped his axe in the pond started weeping god appeared

   asked what the matter was brought a golden axe from the pond wood cutter did
   not accept brought a silver axe not accepted brought an iron axe accepted pleased with the honesty of the poor wood cutter offered all the axes to him.

- 7. Two friends travelling in a forest a bear appeared afraid one hastily climbed up a tree - the other lied down motionless - the bear came near and sniffed the boy - went away the friend on the tree climbed down - inquired - what did the bear tell him - replied - "Don't trust a false friend."
- 8. Robert Bruce King lying on the ground in a dejected mood failed to defeat his enemies was thinking of giving up the attempt saw a spider falling down from the ceiling the ceiling far away wondered how it would get there the spider fell back again again it tried again it fell it made nine such attempts no success climbed up once more at last succeeded in reaching the roof Bruce imitated its example he too tried once again was successful.
- 9. A dog with a piece of bone in its mouth crossing a river saw its reflection mistaken it for another dog with another piece of bone - dropped its bone to snatch the other bone - Moral.

### LANGUAGE IN USE (GRAMMAR)

### Framing 'WH' Questions :

"WH' question are used to collect information so these are called informative questions. Structure of wh questions

### WH + helping verb + subject + verb (main verb) + (rest of the sentence)

Use of helping verb depends on tense of verb and person and number of subject

- All the to be form and to have are repeated in question form depends on subject
- In simple present and simple past tense to do form is used depends on tense.

Simple present tense takes do, does - with third person singular

WH WORDS	PURPOSE OF USE	EXAMPLES
Who	Person ( subject)	Who's that?
Whom	Person (object )	Whom did you meet?
Whose	Person (possessive)	Whose is this book?
What	Object, idea or action	What do you do?
Why	Reason	Why do you sleep early?
Where	Place	Where do you live?
When	Time	When do you go to work?
Which	Selection	Which one do you prefer
What kind	Description	What kind of music do you like?
What time	Time	What time did you come home?
How	Manner, quality	How do you go?
How many	Number(countable)	How many students are there?
How much	Quantity (uncountable)	How much time have we got?
How for	Distance	How far is your school?
How long	Duration of time	How long did you stay in that hotel?
How often	Frequency	How often do you go to the gym?
How old	Age	How old are you?
How come	Reason	How come I didn't see you at the party?

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

### Exercises :

### Frame question to get underluned words or phrase as an answer.

- 1.He gets up at half past six.
- 3.I cook dinner three times a week.
- 5.I have milk for breakfast.
- 7 My favorite music group is <u>Dover.</u>
- 10. Our school in <u>2 km</u> away from home
- 9 He studies for two hours every day.
- 12.I go to school by bus.
- 14.I have got <u>a lot of</u> friends.
- 16.My mother is <u>a doctor</u>
- 18.I have two brothers and one sister
- 20. Tara always wears jeans because she feels comfortable
- 1 What time does Tom get up?
- 3. How often do you cook dinner?
- 5. What do you have for breakfast?
- 7. What is your favorite music group?
- 9. How long does he study every day?
- 11.Who is the best actor in India ?
- 13. How much money have you got?
- 15. How old is your sister?
- 17. Where does my father work?
- 19. When did we come to this place?

- 2.I study English in the afternoon.
- 4. Paris is in France.
- 6.My name is <u>Bob</u>.
- 8. The highest mountain in the world
- is Mount Everest.
- 11.<u>Amithab Bachan</u> is the best actor in India.
- 13.I have got 100 Rs
- 15. My sister is three years old
- 17.My father works in a bank
- 19.We came to this place five years ago.
- - 2. When do you study English?
  - 4. Where is Paris?
  - 6. What is your name?
  - 8. Which is the highest mountain in the world?
  - 10 How far is our school from home?
  - 12. How do you go to school?
  - 14. How many friends have you got?
  - 16. What is your mother?
  - 18. How many brothers and sister do you have?
  - 20.Why does Tara always wear jeans?

### Read the conversation and choose the question to get the italicized sentence as answer.

- 1. Teacher : Do You know Cariyappa?
  - **Student :** Yes, General Cariyappa was *a man of principles*. a. Why was he man of principles? b. Who was a
  - c. How was he man of principles?
- b. Who was a man of principles?
- d. Whom was he man of principles? Ans:b
- 2. **Ramu :** *Mr. and Mrs. Gupta had arranged a Diwali party?* **Somu :** Were you invited?
  - a. Why Mr. and Mrs. Gupta had arranged a party?
  - b. Where did Mr. and Mrs. Gupta arranged?
  - c. Who had arranged a party?
  - d. When did Mr. and Mrs. Gupta arrange a party?
- 3. Mani : Yesterday we visited Mysore Zoo.
  - Monu : Mysore Zoo is one of the best zoos in India.
  - a. When is one of the best zoos in India? b. What is one of the best zoos in India?
  - c. Which is one of the best zoos in India? d. How is one of the best zoos in India? Ans:c

87

4. **Syed :** Shahjahan built *Tajmahal* in memory of his wife Mumtaz. **Savitha :** Yes, it is one of the seven wonders of the world.

SSLC - ENGLISH - 2018

Ans:c

Com	plete	Solution (Questions & Answers)	38	SSLC - ENGLISH -	2018
	mai Ex- Stue	sibility 1( continous tense) n verb will be in present participle f Be+ write = am /is/are/was/were + v dents are writing (be+write)exam dren were playing (be + play) in the	writin s toc	ng (choose helping verbs based on lay.(present tense)	
1	use pres	<ul> <li>verb : Here be form means be fo of helping verb depends on the ter sent form and past tence takes past</li> </ul>	nse fo	orm of the sentence. present tense	,
	Be · only Hav	Using corre e three diferent types questions are + Verb v Verb re + verb	e ask	ed	
10.		<b>cher</b> : Does anyone wish to enterta <b>n</b> : Sir, <i>Mamatha will sing classical s</i> What song will Mamatha sing? Where will Mamatha sing the song?	<i>ong</i> : b.	<i>s.</i> When will Mamatha sing the song?	
9.	Vin a. c.	<b>nu :</b> Why did you not come for eve <b>u :</b> I went to Yoga class at 5 p.m. How did Vinu go to yoga class? Whom did Vinu meet in yoga class	b ?d	. Where was the yoga class? . When did Vinu go to yoga class?	Ans:d
8.	Ran a. c.	<b>aki</b> : I did not see Asha for past 3 d <b>i</b> : Asha had been to Bengaluru. When had Asha been to Bengaluru? Why had Rani gone to Bengaluru?	۔ d ?u d	. When did Rani go to Bengaluru?	Ans:b
7.		<ul> <li>n: My brother is going to the United</li> <li>n: He is going to study M S</li> <li>Why is he going to United States.?</li> <li>When is he going United States.?</li> </ul>	b.		Ans:a
6.		: I'm going for shopping to buy a sa <b>n</b> : <i>Mysore silk is the costliest sari</i> . Which is the costliest sari? Where do we buy Mysore silk sari?		b. What is the cost of the sari? d. When do you buy Mysore Silk sari?	Ans:a
5.		<b>:</b> Mom, I want Some more sugar for <b>n :</b> It is <i>on the Kitchen Shelf</i> take it. Where is sugar? Which is sugar?	r my	coffee. b. Why is sugar? d. How is sugar?	Ans:a
	a. b. c. d.	What did Shahjahan build in memo When did Shahjahan build in memo Which did Shahjahan build in memo When did Shahjahan build in memo	ory o ory o	f his wife Mumtaz? f his wife Mumtaz?	Ans:a

### possibility 2 (passive forms)

Main verb will be in the past participle form (passive form) Reported speech was discussed (be+ discuss) in the class yestarday.(past tense) guestion tag is discussed (be + discuss) in the class today(present tense)

**Verb:** use of verb depends of tense (only present or past tense form used) Ex: Ravi goes (go) to school at 9.am everyday (present tense) Ravi went to school at 10 am yestarday (past tense)

**Have+ verb :** Have form of helping verbs are used( have, has, had) depends on the tense of the sentence. Main verb will be only in the past particible.

Ex- People have stopped ( have + stop ) the strike recently ( present perfect tense) My friend had finished ( have + finished) his works yestarday morning ( past tense)

### Fill in the blanks choosing the right form of verbs given in brackets:

- 2. Satish ...... (have+discover) another pastime which he ...... (can) indulge in. He ..... (begin) filling pages and pages with doodles. (had discovered,could,began)
- 3. Several ...... (visit) to the doctors ...... (follow) with nothing improving for Satish. He ...... (remain) in his silent world and ...... (manage) to paint and draw for himself.(visits,followed,remained,managed)
- 4. One day Ganesh ...... (ride) the bicycle, and ...... (lose) control. He hit against an electric pole. His left leg ..... (fracture) and ...... (be) badly hurt.(rode,lost,fractured,was)
- 5. The first baby bomb ...... (be+drop) on the city of Hiroshima. Many people ...... (be+kill) and injured.(was dropped,were killed)
- 6. A dancer\_\_\_\_\_ (offer) prayers asking forgiveness to the earth goddess before she ...... (begin) the dance. Chefs offer a prayer to the stove before they ...... (cook) for certain religious functions. These ...... (be) rituals at various stages of building a house.(offers,begins,cook,are)
- 7. The seamen ...... (have+lose) their patience. They ...... (think) that they were duped Guilermo ...... (tell) Columbus that the seamen were men with common feelings.(had lost,thought,told)

- 10. Maria ...... (have) a dog. She ...... (buy) it from London. She ...... (be) severely attached to her pet and her family also ...... (love) it.(had,bought,was,loved)

### ARTICLES

The articles a, an and the. These are words that you use in almost every sentence that you speak or write.

Articles are words that define a noun as specific or unspecific.

There two types of articles, they are as mentioned below.

- 1. Indefinite articles A, An
- 2. Definite article The

### 1. Indefinite articles A, An

- The indefinite article takes two forms. The indefinite article indicates that a noun refers to a general idea rather than a particular thing.
- You usually use a/an with a countable noun the first time you say or write that noun.
- Using a or an depends on the sound that begins the next word.

### Use of A

- It is used before the noun that produces consonant sound. (almost same consonant letters of alphabet)
  - Ex a word. A bus, a car, a girl, a boy, city, a member, a student etc
- It is used before a singular noun beginning with vowel letter but produces consonant sounds.
   Ex- a user (sounds like 'yoo-zer,' i.e. begins with a consonant '/ju/' sound, so 'a' is used); a university; a unicycle
- A union , a uniform , universe, a unison, a unit, a unicorn etc

### Use of An

- It's the word **an** when it precedes a word that begins with a vowel sounds. Ex-an *elephant;* an *egg;* an *apple;* an *idiot;* an *orphan etc*
- It is used before a singular noun beginning with consonant letter but produces vowel sounds. Almost the letter 'h' will be silent pronounced depending upon pronunciation. Ex- an *hour, a/an hotel ( it can be pronounce with vowel / consonant sound)*.
- An is used with an alphabet used in short form which produces vowel sound Ex- F, H, L, M, N, R, S, X takes an . an FBA ,an MP , an MLA, an HMT, an x ray, an LCD, an RTO etc

### **Definite Articles – The**

- The definite article is used before singular and plural nouns when the noun is specific or particular. The signals that the noun is definite, that it refers to a particular member of a group.
- 1. The is used when the object (or group of objects) is unique or is considered to be unique: E Ex the earth; the sea; the sky; the equator;
- 2. The is used before a noun which has become definite as a result of being mentioned a second time. But when a person or thing is introduced for the first time, we use the indefinite article A / AN:

Ex-I watched a car as it came up our road. The car stopped outside our house and a man got out. The man was carrying a case in his hand. With the case in his hand, the man looked like a salesman.

 The is used before a noun made definite by the addition of a phrase or of a clause: Ex - The girl in blue; - The man with the hat; - The boy that I met; - The place where I met him

4.	The is used before a noun which can represent only one particular thing: Ex - Ann is in the garden (the garden of this house) Please, pass the wine (the bottle of wine on our table) Look, the postman is arriving (the one who comes to us every day) Enter the car, kids (our car) Have you got the newspaper, dad? (the one we read every day)
5.	The is used before superlatives; before first, second etc.; before only: Ex - The first week; - the best day; - the only way.
6.	The + singular noun can represent a class of animals or things: Ex- The whale is in danger of becoming extinct The dishwasher has made life easier for housewives. But man / mankind, used to represent the human race, has no article If oil supplies run out, man may have to fall back on the horse.
7.	The + adjective represents a class of people Ex the rich; - the poor; - the Spanish; - the Welsh; - the accused (person); - the unexpected (thing).
8.	The is used before certain proper names of seas, rivers, islands, chains of mountains, plural names of countries, deserts: Ex - the Atlantic; - the Netherlands; - the Crimea; - the Sahara. The ganga the cavury the himalays, the western ghats, the united states, The Maldives
9.	The is used before other proper names consisting of adjective + noun or noun + of + noun: Ex- the National Gallery; - the Tower of London.
10.	It is also used before names of choirs, musical instruments orchestras, pop groups etc.; before names of newspapers and ships: Ex-the Beatles; the flute, the saxophone, the drums - the Bach Singers; - the Philadelphia Orchestra; - The Times; the Hindu, the Deccan herald- the Titanic.
11.	used fefore directions Ex- the east , the west. The south , the north, etc
12.	Used with Many organizations – The World Health Organization
	ercises :
1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. <b>Ans</b> v <b>1.</b>	

91

## HELPING VERB / AUXILIARY VERBS

Helping verbs help the main verb in a sentence by extending the meaning of the verb. They add detail to how time is conveyed in a sentence. Auxiliary Verbs are used to form question and negative sentence, and they are usually used with main verb to form many different kinds of tenses.

Helping verb usually comes before the main verb in a sentence. Together the helping verb and the main verb form a verb phrase.

### Forms of helping verbs

There are three form of primary auxiliary verb.

- 1. To be am, is, are, was were
- 2. To have have, has, had
- 3. To do do, does, did

### Helping verbs have their own forms in the two tenses and in numbers

Forms of helping verb	Present tense form	Past tense form
To be (Singular)	Am, Is	Was
(Plural)	Are	Were
To have (singular)	Have ,has	Had
(plural)	Have	Had
To do (singular)	Do ,Does	Did
(Plural)	Do	Did

The below table shows how personal pronoun agrees with helping

Pronoun forms	5	To be		To have		To do	
		Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
I Person (singular)	Ι	Am	Was	Have	Had	Do	Did
(Plural)	We	Are	Was	have	Had	Do	Did
II Person(sing&plu)	You	Are	Were	Have	had	Do	Did
III Person (Singular)	He	ls	Was	Has	Had	Does	Did
	She	ls	Was	Has	Had	Does	Did
	lt	ls	Was	Has	Had	Does	Did
(Plural)	They	are	Were	have	had	Do	Did

### Subject verb agreement :

Note : The most important type of agreement in English is the agreement of number between subject and verb. And the question of agreement arises only with

- i) Present tense forms of the main verb: He comes. They come.
- ii) Present and past tense forms of the primary auxiliary verbs: be, have, do.
- iii) Personal pronouns: I we you he she it they

### Area of Confusion

Confusion arises where words come between the subject and the verb. The following are examples of a few confusing areas of subject- verb agreement :

Two subjects joined by "and" always take a plural verb:
 E.g: Joshua and Noel are good at studies.
 However, when two nouns refer to the same person or idea, the verb is singular.

- Eg: i. The Governor and Chancellor of the University is the Chief Guest. ii. Idli and sambar is good for breakfast.
  - ii. Iuii anu sambar is good for breakfast.
    - iii. bread and butter is the one of the basic need of human beings.
- 2. When a singular noun is followed by expressions like with, along with, together with, as well as, in addition to etc., These words and phrases are not part of the subject. Ignore them and use a singular verb when the subject is singular. the verb agrees with the singular subject.
  - Eg. The teacher, along with her students, has gone to the scienceexhibition. The bus, with all the 50 passengers, has fallen into the ravine.

The politician, along with the newsmen, is expected shortly. Excitement, as well as nervousness, is the cause of her shaking.

- 3. Indefinite pronouns like each, every, everybody, everyone, someone, anyone, no one, anybody, somebody, nobody, anything, something, everything, nothing take a singular verb.
- E.g. i. Nobody is above the law.
  - ii. Each of the students has done well in the test.
  - iii. Everyone has his/her own problems.

## However, some indefinite pronouns like some, any, most take a singular verb with non-countable nouns and a plural verb with countable nouns

- E.g: i. Most of the advice goes unheeded.
  - ii. Some of the students are very courageous.

### Indefinite pronouns like many, few, several take a plural verb.

- Eg. i. Many agree that the rapists should be hanged in public.
  - ii. Several of the paintings were destroyed in the fire.

### 'None' takes either a singular or a plural verb depending on the intended meaning

- Eg. i. None of them are to be blamed.
  - ii. None of this money is mine.
- 4. When subjects are connected by either.... or, neither.... nor, the verb agrees with the subject closest to it.
- Eg. Either Vivek or Joshua is going to come. Neither Noel nor his friends have come. Neither he normy aunt or my uncle is arriving by train today. Neither Juan nor Carmen is available. Either Kiana or Casey is helping today with stage decorations. or I am responsible.
- 5. In sentences beginning with no one or one in the verb agrees with the subject closest to it.
- Eg. i. No one, except Joshua, has agreed to come.
  - ii. One in every ten of them are uninterested.
- 6. Some words ending with- "s" look plural but are singular in meaning and hence take a singular verb: Mathematics, Statistics, Economics, politics, measles, news, cards etc.

- Eg. i. The news is not as bad as expected.
  - ii. Measles is not a serious disease.

- 7. Articles of dress and tools which have two equal parts joined at one end, also called pair words, take a plural verb: scissors, trousers, tongs, pyjamas etc.
- Eg: i. My trousers are loose.
  - ii. The tongs are on the table.
- 8. Collective Nouns normally take singular verbs. A collective noun is a noun used to name a whole group. Following are some common examples: Army, crowd, orchestra, audience, flock, public, class, group, swarm, club, herd, team, committee, jury, troop, staff
- Eg. The team is ready for the match.
  All of my family has arrived OR have arrived.
  The staff is deciding how they want to vote.
  Most of the jury is here
  A third of the population was not in favor OR were not in favor of the bill.
  But when members of the group are seen as a collection of people doing things as individuals, such collective nouns take plural verbs.
- E.g. i. The jury are divided in their opinion. The staff are deciding how they want to vote.

### 9. The expression "One of ...." is followed by a plural noun and takes a singular verb.

- Eg. i. One of my friends plays for the under- 16 state team.
  - ii. one of them is very intelligent
    - iii. one of the boys in the class is very industrious.
- 10. When the expression "more than" is followed by a noun, the verb agrees with the subject.
- Eg. i. More than one player is injured.
  - ii. More than ten students are absent.
- 11. Use a singular verb with distances, periods of time, sums of money, etc., when considered as a unit. Examples: Three miles is too far to walk. Five years is the maximum sentence for that offense. Ten dollars is a high price to pay. BUT

Ten dollars (i.e., dollar bills) were scattered on the floor.

12. With words that indicate portions—e.g., a lot, a majority, some, all—Rule 1 given earlier in this section is reversed, and we are guided by the noun after of. If the noun after of is singular, use a singular verb. If it is plural, use a plural verb.

94

### Examples:

A lot of the pie has disappeared. A lot of the pies have disappeared. A third of the city is unemployed. A third of the people are unemployed. All of the pie is gone. All of the pies are gone. Some of the pie is missing. Some of the pies are missing.

## 12. There and here are never subjects. In sentences that begin with these words, the subject is usually found later on in the sentence.

Ex- There were five books on the shelf. (were, agrees with the subject book) Here is the report you wanted. (Is agrees with subject report)

### Fill in the blanks with the verbs given in brackets:

- 1. Every seat in this bus ...... a number (has/have).
- 2. The crowd ..... dispersed by the police (was/were).
- 3. One of my friends ..... visiting palace this evening (are/is)
- 4. Number of questions ...... asked by the students (were/was)
- 5. All seats in this bus ..... numbers (have/has)
- 6. Either Ram or his friends ..... taken it (has/have).
- 7. She, as well as you, ..... intelligent (is/are).
- 8. The match ..... very interesting (was/were).
- 9. Each of the girls ..... done her homework (has/have)
- 10. Bread and butter ..... his daily diet (were/was).

### Excesses :

- 1. Each of the girls (look-looks) good on skis.
- 2. Everybody (was-were) asked to remain quiet.
- 3. Neither of the men (is-are) here yet.
- 4. (Is-Are) each of the girls ready to leave?
- 5. Several of the sheep (is-are) sick.
- 6. Some members of the faculty (is-are) present.
- 7. Nobody in the class (has-have) the answer.
- 8. Each of the girls (observe-observes) all the regulations.
- 9. All of the milk (is-are) gone.
- 10. Most of the seats (was-were) taken.

Answers :

1. looks,	2. Was,	3. ls	4 is.	5. are
6. are	7. Has	8. observes	9. is	10. Were,

## **QUESTION TAG**

**USAGE:** A question tag is a question added at the end of a sentence. Speakers use question tags chiefly to make sure their information is correct or to seek argument. There are two types of question tags

- a. Positive question tag
- b. Negative question tag.

They consist of a statement and a tag . A negative tag is used with an affirmative statement whereas a positive tag is used with a negative statement.

1. If the statement has "be" as an ordinary verb, we use a form of 'be' in the tag. Tags are always used with pronouns.

95

- After positive statements, we use a negative tag. You are from Zaire, aren't you? Angela is here, isn't she? Your father was at school, wasn't he?
- b. After negative statements, we use a positive tag. I am not surprised, am I?

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

SSLC - ENGLISH - 2018

Ans:was Ans:is Ans:were Ans:have Ans:have Ans:are Ans:was Ans:has. Ans:was

Ans:has

Tim and Ted aren't rich, are they? They weren't at the cinema, were they? That isn't Ben, is it?

- 2. If the statement has a modal, it is repeated in the tag. Kara can go herself, can't she? You should get up early, shouldn't you? You wouldn't do that, would you? We must help them, mustn't we?
- 3. With the Simple Present Tense we use do / does – don't / doesn't? With the Simple Past Tense we use did / didn't? They like going to the cinema, don't they? Alan works at a bank, doesn't he? You all watched TV during the night, didn't you? Alicia went to the cinema, didn't she? He didn't read the novel, did he? Andrew doesn't live here, does he?

### After all tenses, we just put the auxiliary.

Maral is coming today, isn't she? Muhammad is not drinking beer, is he? They were playing football yesterday, weren't they? Laila and Steve were on the bus, weren't they? They are going to play football, aren't they? **Note:** Remember that 's = is or has, and 'd = had or would He's got a car, hasn't he? She's in the office, isn't she?

Question tags with HAVE and DO are often both possible after the noun-4. auxiliary "have".

Note: "do" is preferred.

Mr. Farmer has two cars, hasn't he? Or doesn't he? She has a nice kitten, hasn't she? Or doesn't she? You haven't a house, have you? Do you? They have a garden, haven't they? Or don't they?

After "I am" the tag is "aren't". if it is in negative 'I am not' tag is "am I ?" 5. I am your father, aren't I? I am a bit late, aren't I? I am a teacher, aren't I? Negative :

I am not your brother, am I?. I am not a student, am I?.

6. If the statement contains words such as no, no one, nothing, nobody, scarcely, hardly, hardly ever, never, neither, seldom, under no circumstances ... etc it is considered a negative statement and followed by an affirmative tag Julia hardly ever drinks coke, does she? Nothing will cure his illness, will it? He never acts like a gentleman, does he? She is hardly the right person for the job, is she? It is no good, is it?

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

- 7. If the subject of the statement is somebody, anybody, nobody, everybody, no one, and neither .... We use the pronoun "they" in question tag. Somebody entered the garden, didn't they? Everybody was upset, weren't they? Everybody objects to the plan, do they?
- 8. When the subject of the statement is that or this, the pronoun in the tag is "it". The pronoun is "they" for their plural forms these and those. This is an expensive necklace, isn't it? Those are very naughty children, aren't they? That wasn't a big surprise, was it? These weren't yours, were they?
- 9. When we use a there + be combination in a sentence the pronoun in the tag is again "there". There isn't a hotel next to the museum, is there? There won't be any trouble, will there? There is a bus to Atlantic City every hour, isn't there? There weren't any children at school, were there?
- **10.** Let's has the tag "shall we?" Let's go to the cinema, shall we? Let's have a party, shall we? Let's drink tea, shall we? Let's go out for a walk, shall we?
- 11. After positive imperatives, we use will you, won't you, can you, can't you, could you ...etc .Yet for the negative imperatives we only use "will you?" Open the door, will you / won't you, can you, could you ...etc Don't play with your nose, will you?
- 12. "Have to" is considered Simple Present and "had to" is considered Simple Past. Your father has to wear glasses, doesn't he? They don't have to come early, do they? We had to borrow some money to buy a new house, didn't we? They didn't have to read the story book, did they?
- 13. Some introductory phrases such as "I am afraid, I think, I believe, I am sure, I suspect, I suppose, it appears that, it seems that, it looks as if, as far as I remember, as far as I can see ... so on " don't affect question tags except for the transfer of negation .I suppose you are not serious, are you? I think my mom returned home, didn't she? I don't suppose you are serious, are you? I don't believe you have paid for it yet, have you? I don't think anyone will volunteer, will they? I don't think anyone will volunteer, will the? I don't think anyone will volunteer, will the? I tappears that she is enjoying herself, isn't she? As far as I can see, Wade is the best, isn't he? Note: For the phrase "you know that " the question tag is don't you ? You know that you can do it, don't you?

14. If the subject of the sentence is everything, nothing, something, anything the pronoun in the tag is "it". Everything is ready, isn't it? Nothing has the end, has it? Anything is possible, isn't it?

### **ADD QUESTION TAG?**

1.	Ramesh is a famous ed a. Isnt' he?			The question tag to c. doesn't he?	
0					u. Doco ne :
2.	Leela and Sheela were a			lon't thou?	d Aron't thou?
	a. Isnt' she?		<u>tney r</u>	. Isn t they?	d. Aren't they?
3.	Amith never tells lies				
	a. Isnť he?		C	c. Doesn't he?	d. Does he?
4.	Meera can do the sum				
	a. Can she?	<u>b.</u> <u>Can't sh</u>	<u>e</u> (	c. Isn't she?	d. Is she?
5.	I'm fond of eating sweet	S,			
	a. Am I?	b. Amn't I?	<u>c</u>	<u>c. Aren't I?</u>	d. Are I?
6.	Jazz met his friend in Lo	ondon,			
	a. does he?	-		. Did he?	d. doesn't he?
Evo	cises :				
1	He is late this morning,		2 The	e hotel was quite g	boor
3.	She cooks well,			a can't tell the diffe	
5.	They always sleep after	lunch.		u're coming with u	
7.	Manju plays football,	,		i didn't have any les	
9.	Anil is on holiday,			e students see it e	
11.	Mr Praveen doesn't know	your father,		ere are lots of cars	-
13.	You like fish,			ork hard for your e	
15.	You have tea at 4,			ere will be a strike	
17.	Nothing is good.			m not disturbing	
19.	Tom does his work very wers :	well,	20. I NI	s isn't very pleasa	int,
AIIS		Magazit :10	~	de e elt els el Q	4
	1. isn't he? 2	. Wasn't it?		does't she ? doesn't he?	4. can you?
	5 don't they? 6 9. Isn't he? 1	aren't you?	/ /. ) 11	doesha?	8. did you?
	13. do you? 1	4 will you?	15	5  don't you?	12. aren't there 16. Won't there?
	17. is it? 1	8. am I ?	19	9. doesn't he?	20. ls it?
	AUTIV	C AND F	AJJI	<b>VE VOICE</b>	

Active voice- In an active voice subject performs the action of the verb. Subject is called the agent of action.

Ex- I want icecream She sings songs We reached station **Passive Voice-** In a passive voicesubject does not perform the action instead it receives the action or the action of verb is performed on the subject.

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

98

Ex-	Songs are sung by her Station was reached by us. IMP NOTE- Only Transitive verb are changed in to passive. Intransitive verbs can't be changed into Passive (transitive and intransitive verbs are discussed in kinds of verb) Ex- The man is running. The sun rises in the east. He goes to school. Passive: Not Possible as there is no object after verb. Points to be remembered while changing Active to passive		
1. Ex-	Identifying the subject and object of th <u>Sita</u> brought <u>the flower</u> Sub Object	e active voice.	
2. Ex-		I into subject of the passive. And subject of e	
3.	Use of helping verb.		
з.	In passive helping verb 'to be'n	nust be used. Helping verb depends of tense	
4.	form of verb and must agree with the	subject of the passive. Ist participle form of verb followed by helping	
ч. Ex-	Active	Passive	
1.	She brought the flower	1.The flower <u>was</u> brought by her h subject the flower is singular and tense past	
2.	The child plays games. (verb is simple present so helping ve	2.Games <u>are played</u> by the child orb present form of 'to be' is used. And verb takes plural to be form' are'. The main verb	
3.	Students have answered the question. 3. The question <u>has been</u> answered by student ( to be form of helping verb is used in the form of 'been' and helping verb agrees wit singular subject and takes singular helping verb.)		
4.	Pronoun are changed into theirs obje		
	Active	Passive	
Ex-	He writes notes They send messages We listen news I watched T V You welcome guests She has painted the pictures It climbs tree	Notes is written by <u>him</u> Messages are sent by <u>them</u> News is listened by <u>us</u> T V was watched by <u>me</u> Guests are welcomed by <u>you</u> The pictures have been painted by <u>her</u> Tree is climbed by <u>it</u>	
5.		d with object of passive but it's not compul-	

5. The preposition 'by' is commonly used with object of passive but it's not compulsory. Certain verb take fixed preposition after them that replaces the "by". Such verb are – known to, surprised at/by, amazed at, astonished at, vexed at, annoyed with/ at, contained in, decorated with, beaten with/by, filled with, tired of, engulfed in. etc

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

99

Tense	Active voice	Passive voice
Simple present	Ramesh drives car	Car is driven by Ramesh
Present continuous	Ramesh is driving car	Car is being driven by Ramesh
Present perfect	Ramesh has driven car	Car has been driven by Ramesh
Simple past	Ramesh drove car	Car was driven by Ramesh
Past continuous	Ramesh was driving car	Car was being driven by Ramesh
Past Perfect	Ramesh had driven car	Car had been driven by Ramesh
Present /past perfect tense	No passive form	
	Passive in different ser	itences
Two objects ( using	He gave her a flower	A flower was given to her by
direct or indirect object)		him(DO)
		She was given a flower by him (1
		D O)
Model verb (be is used)	I can speak English	English can be spoken by me
Compliment	Mother named the child	The child was named Ravi by
	Ravi	mother
		(Here Ravi is not a boy just a
		name)
Phrasal verbs	Mother looks after the	The child is looked after by
	child	mother
Infinitive (be is used)	We have to attend the	The class has to be attended by us
	class	
Imperative (begins with	Open the door	Let the door be opened
let)		-
Negative	I don't like films	Films are not liked by me
Interrogative	Did she complete notes	Was notes completed by her
C	Who finished work?	By whom work was finished?
Gerund	He wanted playing	He wanted that football should be
	football	played.

### Conversion of Active to Passive Sentence in different Tense

### **Important Points to Remember**

- Only 6 tenses are changed into passive. perfect continuous tenses does not form passive voice.
- Sentence expresses -anxious, arrange, agreed, determine, decide, demand followed by infinitive verb and object.

Active: He decided to buy the house. Passive: He decided that the house should be bought.

### **Exercises :**

- 1. Teacher teaches us grammar.
- 3. The firemen took the injured to the hospital. 4. An earthquake destroyed the town.
- 5. The boy's work pleased the teacher.
- 7. Who taught you French?
- 9. Spectators thronged the streets.
- 11. The wind blew down the trees.
- 13. Alice posted the letter.

- The teacher praised him.
   An earthquake destroyed
- 6. The fire damaged the building.
- 8. The manager will give you a ticket.
- 10. Everyone will blame us.
- 12. The police caught the thieves.
- 14. The hostess received us.
- 15. They/somebody killed the snake with a stick.

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

100

### Answer:

- We are taught grammar by Teacher. 1.
- 3. The injured were taken to the hospital by the firemen. 4. The town was destroyed by an earthquake.
- 5. The teacher was pleased with the boy's work.
- 7. By whom were you taught French?
- 9. The streets were thronged with spectators. 10. We will be blamed by everyone.
- 11.
- The letter was posted by Alice. 13.
- 15. The snake was killed with a stick.

### 2. He was praised by the teacher.

- 6. The building was damaged by the fire.
- 8. You will be given a ticket by the manager.
- The trees were blown down by the wind. 12. The thieves were caught by the police.
  - 14. We were received by the hostess.
  - Degrees of comparison

Degrees of Comparison are used when we compare one person or one thing with another. There are three Degrees of Comparison in English.

Degrees of Comparison are applicable only to Adjectives and Adverbs Nouns and verbs do not have degrees of comparisons

### They are:

Positive degree. 2. Comparative degree. 1. 3. Superlative degree.

#### 1. **Positive degree**

The Positive Degree is used to denote the only existence of quality. the base adjective form is used in the positive degree.

The Positive Degree of an adjective in comparison is the adjective in its simple form and takes comparative words 'as'

It is used to denote the mere existence of some quality of what we speak about. It is used when no comparison is made.

Eq. David is a **rich** man. Apple is **sweet** to taste. This flower is **beautiful**. He is **as wise as** his brother. It is a **tall** building. He is a **wise** student.

He is an **intelligent** boy.

#### 2. **Comparative degree**

The Comparative Degree is used to compare the qualities of two persons or things. The Comparative Degree denotes the existence of a higher degree of the quality than the positive.

t is used when two things (or two sets of things) are compared.

Adjectives of single syllable takes suffix '-er' to the positive form. Adjectives of 2 or more syllables takes 'more' before the adjective to form comparative form.

- Ex: taller, cleverer, smaller, bigger, more intelligent, more powerful Comparative word 'than' is used
- Ex-This building is **taller than** any other building.
  - Mango is sweeter than Apple.

The gold is **costlier than** any other metal.

English is more useful than any other language I the world.

#### 3. Superlative degree

The Superlative Degree denotes the existence of the highest degree of the quality. The Superlative Degree is used when more than two nouns or things are compared. To form this degree -est is added to the single syllable adjective and the most is added to the adjective of two or more syllables

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

EX- This is **the tallest** building. Apple is **the sweetest** fruit. The gold is **the costliest** metal English **is the most useful** language in the world.

### Formation of comparative and superlative : Regular comparisons

bright	-	brighter	brightes
black		blacker	blackest
bold		bolder	boldest
clever		cleverer	cleverest
cold		colder	coldest
fast		faster	fastest
great		greater	greatest
high		higher	highest
kind		kinder	kindest
By usir	ig more a	and most	

### POSITIVE

### COMPARATIVE

active	more active
attractive	more attractive
beautiful	more beautiful
brilliant	more brilliant
careful	more careful
courageous	more courageous
cunning	more cunning
difficult	more difficult
famous	more famous
faithful	more faithful
proper	more proper
popular	more popular
splendid	more splendid

most attractive most beautiful most brilliant most careful most courageous most cunning most difficult most famous most faithful

most proper most popular

most splendid

SUPERLATIVE most active

### Comparative and Superlative Adverb

They follow most of the same rules as adjectives.

Most comparative and superlative adverbs use "more" and "most" because they end in "ly". Most adverbs end in "ly"

### 2. Irregular Comparisons

A few of the comparatives and superlatives in English do not follow the usual pattern. Here is a list of common exceptions.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bad	worse	worst
badly	worse	worst
far(distance)	farther	farthest
far(extent)	further	furthest
good	better	best
ill	worse	worst

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

102

late	later	latest or last
less	lesser	least
little(amount)	less	least
many	more	most
much	more	most
well	better	best

### Transformation of degrees :

### Comparision with only two objects-

When a comparison is made between two individuals we do not normally use the superlative. Only positive and comparative is made

When transforming sentence in to other degree meaning should not be changed, in order to keep the same meaning Affirmative and negative sentence are used.

### Positive sentence-

Positive meaning

noun+ verb +as+ adjective/ adverb + as + noun

### Negative sentence

Noun+ verb +so + adjective/ adverb + as + noun

Ex : Positive: Maria is not so intelligent as Sonia. Comparative :Sonia is more intelligent than Maria.

> Positive: The brown cat is as beautiful as the grey cat Comparative: The gray can is not more beautiful than the brown cat.

Positive: Ravi is as not so tall as Arun. Comparative : Arun is more taller than Ravi.

Positive: Nayana talks as sweetly as Keerti Comparative : Keerti doesn't talk more sweetly than Nayana.

**Comparison is made with more than two objects**-(Here the only one object which is compared is superior)

### Positive structure -

No other + noun + helping verb + as + adj/adv + as + noun

Ex: No other metal is as precious as gold.

### Comparative degree :

Noun + verb + adjective / adv (comparative) + than + any other + noun.

Ex: Gold is more precious than any other metal.

### Superlative degree :

Noun + verb + the adjective / adv (superlative) + (of all) + noun.

Superlative: Gold is the most precious of all metals.

Ex: Superlative : India is the largest democracy in the world.
 Comparative : India is larger than any other democracy in the world.
 Positive : No other democracy in the world is as large as India.

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

Positive :	Sushma is cleverer than any other girls in the class. No other girls in the class are as clever as Suahma. Sushma is the cleverest girls in the class.
Comparative :	No other man was as strong as Hercules. Hercules was stronger than any other man. Hercules was the strongest man in the world.
Comparative :	No other boy in the class is as intelligent as James. James is more intelligent than any other boy in the class. James is the most intelligent boy in the class.
(Here in the fol	lowing sentences the object which is compared is not superior b

(Here in the following sentences the object which is compared is not superior but it is one among them)

### **Structures**

Positive

Ex: **Very few** Indian saints were as popular as Vivekananda. **Comparative :** 

### Noun + verb + adjective / adv (superlative) + than + most/some other + noun.

Ex: Vivekananda was more popular than **most** other Indian saints.

### Superlative :

Noun + verb + one of + the + adjective / adv (superlative) + (of all) + noun.

Ex: Vivekananda was one of the most popular Indian saints.

Superlative : Delhi is one of the most historic cities in India. Comparative : Delhi is more historic than most other cities in India. Positive. : Very few cities in India are as historic as Delhi.
Positive : Very few animals are as useful as the cow Comparative : The cow is more useful than most other animals. (Comparative) Superlative : The cow is one of the most useful animals. (Superlative)

### **Exercises** :

- 1. Iron is more useful than any other metal.
- Mr. Yadav is the oldest member of the club. 3.
- 5. Mumbai is one of the richest cities in India.
- Ranjita is the tallest girl in the class. 7.
- 9. Bombay is one of the biggest cities in India.
- 10. Wordsworth is the greatest of all English poets.

### Answers:

- Iron is the most useful metal. (Superlative) 1.
- no other metal is as useful as iron( positive)
- Platinum is more precious than any other metal. (Comparative) 2.
- No other metal is as precious as platinum. (Positive) Mr. Yadav is older than any other member of the club. (Comparative) 3. No other member of the club is as old as Mr. Yadav. (Positive)

104

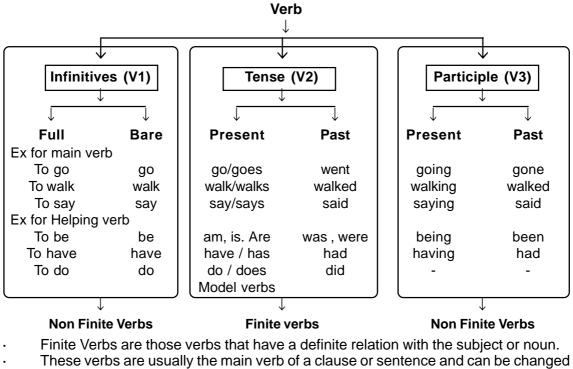
### SSLC - ENGLISH - 2018

- 4. Few poets are as famous as Shakespeare 6. Lead is heavier than any other metal.
- 8. Gold is more precious than silver.

2. Platinum is the most precious metal.

- 4. Shakespeare is more famous than most other poets(Comparative) Shakespeare is one of the most famous poets(Superlative) /
- 5. Few cities in India are as rich as Mumbai. (Positive) Mumbai is richer than most other cities in India.(Superlative)
- 6. No other metal is as heavy as lead. (Positive) Lead is the heaviest of all metals. (Superlative)
- 7. No other girl in the class is as tall as Ranjita. (Positive) Ranjita is taller than any other girl in the class. (Comparative)
- 8. Silver is not as precious as gold. (Positive)
- 9. Few Indian cities are as big as Bombay. (Positive) Bombay is bigger than most other Indian cities. (Superlative)
- 10. Wordsworth is greater than any other English poet. (Comparative) No other English poet is as great as Wordsworth. (Positive)

### Finite and Nonfinite Verbs :



- according to the noun.
- They are used only in simple present and simple pasttense.
- All the present and past tense form of helping verbs are finite verbs.
- Ex-
- She walks home. –(Here we see that the finite verb is walks and the pronoun is 'she'.) She walked home. –(Here we can see how the verb changed/modified to change the tense of the sentence.)

He painted the fence. (In this example, painted is a finite verb.)

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

105

He varnished the painted fence. You promised me the last ticket. I am excited about going to the amusement park. I went for a walk around the park. Everyone wanted to go to the amusement park, but we only had four tickets. On that dark day, the spirits **rose** from their graves to feast upon the living. In that moment, it all *became* clear that the amusement park was a trap.

### Non-Finite Verbs :

- These verbs cannot be the main verb of a clause or sentence as they do not talk about the action that is being performed by the subject or noun.
- They do not indicate any tense, mood or gender.
- They are used as nouns, adverbs and adjectives.
- They are also used to form non-finite clauses which are simply dependent clauses that use non-finite verbs.
- He loves camping in the woods. Here the non-finite verb is camping and it is used Ex: as a noun. These kind of non-finite verbs are called Gerunds.

I need to go to sleep. - Here the non- finite verb phrase is to sleep, it is acting as a noun. Non-finite verbs that use 'to' before them are called Infinitives.

The sleeping dog caused a delay. - The nonfinite verbs that have '-ing' or '-ed' as suffixes and cause the verb to come an adjective are called Participles.

I started **screaming** at my parents for trying **to send** me to camp.

Arriving late, I saw the other kids and they seemed to be excited.

Uses of bare infinitives are already discussed in infinitive form verb and its uses chapter.

### Exercises :

15.

- 1. He gave me a chair to sit.
- 3. I want to buy some clothes.
- He is about to leave. 5.
- He was wearing a torn shirt. 7.
- They got the roof repaired. 9.
- 11. My little brother wants to be an actor.
- 13. I couldn't solve the problem.
- 2. It was a sight to see.
- 4. Barking dogs seldom bite.
- 6. It is time to start.
- 8. He had his shoes polished.
- 10. Finding the door open I went inside
- 12. She worked hard to pass the test.
- 14. To err is human.
- Your duty is to cross the river without getting noticed.
- The doctor is attending to the injured people. 17. She did not open the door. 16.
- The students were asked to submit their assignments by Friday. 18.
- 19. The teacher has encouraged the students to work hard.
- 20. The dog wagged its tail to show its happiness
- Several witnesses saw the boy leave the sidewalk and run into the side of the bus 21.
- 22 They made me laugh 23. let me explain the situation 24. She had better select me 25. head master saw me come late to school. Answers: 1. Finite – gave; non-finite – to sit 2. Finite – was: non-finite – to see non-finite – to buy 4. Finite – bite; 3. Finite – want; non-finite – barking 5. Finite – is: non-finite – to leave 6. Finite – is: non-finite – to start

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

106

7. Finite – was;	non-finite – wearing	8. Finite – had;	non-finite – polished	
9. Finite – got; non-finite – repaired		10.Finite – went;	non-finite – finding	
11. Finite – wants;	non-finite – to be	12. Finite – worked;	non-finite – to pass	
13. Finite – could;	non-finite – solve	14. Finite – is;	non-finite – to err	
15. Finite – is; non-fir	nite – to cross, getting	16. Finite – may; non-finite – be, attending		
17. Finite – did;	non-finite – open	18. Finite – were;non-	finite – asked, to submit	
19. Finite – has;	non-finite – encouraged, to work.			
20. Finite – wagged;	non-finite – to show			
21. Finite – saw	non finite- leave and r	un 22. Finite – ma	de non finite-laugh	
23. Finite- let	non finite- explain	24. Finite- had	d better non finite - se	
CONDITIONAL CLAUSES				

Conditional Sentences are also known as Conditional Clauses or If Clauses. They are used to express that the action in the main clause (without if) can only take place if a certain condition (in the clause with if) is fulfilled. There are three types of Conditional Sentences.

There are 4 types of conditional clauses

- 1. Real / open / possible (conditional clause 1)
- 2. Unreal / imaginary (conditional 2)
- 3. Impossible condition (condition 3)
- 4. Zero condition (conditional 4)
- 1. Real / open / possible Conditional Sentence Type 1
- It is possible and also very likely that the condition will be fulfilled.
- It is used to refer to the present or future where the situation is real.
- It refers to a possible condition and its probable result.
- In these sentences the if clause is in the simple present, and the main clause takes present form of models. Main clause can be used in interrogative / negative / positive.
- In the negative form unless is used instead if not ( if not = unless)
- Negative can be used for both clauses

### Structure for positive sentence : Negative sentence

Unless + verb (present) + ....., Subject + model (present) + verb (bare inf) + ....

Ex.: If I find her address, I'll send her an invitation.

If this thing happens, that thing will happen.

If you don't hurry, you will miss the train.

If it rains today, you will get wet.

Unless you work hard, you won't get good marks

(unless you work hard = if you don't work hard)

Unless he listens my words, How can he go there?.

### Unreal/ imaginary Conditional Sentence Type 2

- This conditional is used to talk about unreal possibility or imaginary events.
- It is used to refer to a time that is now or any time, and a situation that is unreal. These sentences are not based on fact.
- It is used to refer to a hypothetical condition and its probable result.
- In these sentences if clause takes the simple past form of verb, and the main clause takes past form of models.
- It take 'were' with singular subject.

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

107

### Structure

If+subject+verb (past)+...., subject+would/could/might/must+verb (bare inf)+.....

Ex: If I were the king, my dress would be made of gold.
If my friend were a fish, he would be live on the land
If I found her address, I would send her an invitation.
If this thing happened, that thing wouldn't happen
If you went to bed earlier, you would not be so tired.
If it rained, you would get wet.
If I spoke Italian, I would be working in Italy.

### 3. Impossible Conditional Sentence Type

It is impossible because it refers to the past and they have either already occurred or might have occurred but won't anymore.

### Structure

If + subject + verb (past perfect) ....., Subject + would + have + past participle + .....

Ex: If I had found her address, I would have sent her an invitation.
If this thing had happened, that thing would have happened.
If you had studied harder, you would have passed the exam.
If it had rained, you would have got wet.
If I had accepted that promotion, I would have been working in Milan.
Unless we had got to the airport on time, we wouldn't have caught our flight.
I could have asked him about the matter if he had shown up.

### **Zero condition**

- The zero conditional is an absolute certainty. It does not deal with the future or the past, they simply deal with facts The result of the condition is always true.
- The most common types of zero conditionals are scientific facts. Universal truths
- The 'if' in these conditionals can be replaced with 'when'

### Structure

If (when) + subject + verb (present) + ....., subject + verb (present) + .....

Ex: If (when) you cool water to zero degrees, it turns into ice.If you cut your figure with knife, blood comes out.If you hold magnet bar in the air, it stands in north south directions

### Exercises :

- 1. If I.....(be) stronger, I'd help you carry the piano.
- 2. If we'd seen you, we would have ———(stop)
- 3. If he .....(meet) us tomorrow, we'll say hello.
- 4. He would have repaired the car himself if he .....(to have + have ) the tools.
- 5. If you drop the vase, it will.....(break).
- 6. If he hadn't studied, he would not ......(to have+pass) the exam.
- 7. I wouldn't go to school by bus if I .....( to have) a driving licence.
- 8. unless she.....(see) him every day, she'd be lovesick.
- 9. he won't travel(i) to America, unless he......(get) a cheap flight.
- 10. We'd be stupid if we ......(tell) him about our secret.

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

108

- 11. If he ..... (wake up) true early, he'll go jogging.
- 12. He .....(use model) visit true his uncle, if he finishes early.
- 13. If she had taken care of her son, he .....(not/become) true a criminal.
- 14. If I were a star, I..... (help) true the poor.
- 15. She would have been top of her class if she .....(work) true hard.
- 16. If you touch a fire, you ......(get) burned.
- 17. You ......(get)water if you mix hydrogen and oxygen
- 18. If I were a star, I..... (help) true the poor.
- 19. If I .....(be) true a star, I would help the needy.
- 20. I ......(pass) true the exam if I had worked hard

#### Answers :

1. were 2. stopped 3. meets 4. had had 5 break 6. Have passed 7. Had 8. Saw 9. Gets 10. Told11.wakes up, 12.will 13. Would not have become 14. would help 15. Had worked16.get17.get 18. Would help19.were 20. would have passed.

#### Read the conversation and fill in the blank choosing the appropriate answer:

1.		ed in the exam. :udied hard, she b. <u>would have</u>		d. Would
2.	Manoj : I bought Au Krishna : Really! If a. could have	I had money, I too	bought Audi c. would	d. Could
3.	Srikala : Show me	the photos of your trip t to take my Camera. If I b. <u>could have</u>	to Ooty. had taken my Came	
4.	Abu : Do you own a Avinash : I don't ha a. must be	a house? ve enough money. If I h b. would has	ad money, I bc c. would had	ought a house my now. d. would have
5.		all her money in busin her, Iadvised h b. would has		y upset. d. would be
6.	Mohit : If I had any	went for a party. So I co project, Iatten <u>b.</u> wouldn't have	ded the party.	y project. d. wouldn't had
7.	Nisha : Your drawir	ng looks dull without an och pens, I	y colours.	d. could had
8.	Ravi : I am very tire Harish : If I had bike a. will have	ed. I can't walk. e, I dropped yc b. will be		d. would have
9.	Preethi : You misse Pramitha : If I had s	started early, I		
	a. won't have	b. can't have	c. shouldn't have	e d <u>. wouldn't have</u>

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

109

## SYLLABLE

A syllable is a single unit of written or spoken word, an unbroken sound that must have a vowel sound.

## Types of syllable :

- 1. One syllable words known as **monosyllabic**: Cat, dog, car, sky.
- Two syllables words known as disyllabic: Ho-tel, Po-em, Chor-us.
- 3. Three syllables words known as **trisyllabic**: Beau-ti-ful, met-a-phor, po-e-try.
- 4. More than three syllables words known as **polysyllabic**: Ox-y-mor-on.

## Ways to count number of syllables :

- The "Listen Method" Rules Say the word. How many times do you hear A, E, I, O, or U as a separate sound? This is the number of syllables.
- The "Chin Method" Rules
   Put your hand under your chin.
   Say the word.
   How many times does your chin touch your hand?
   This is the number of syllables.
- The "Clap Method" Rules Clapping may help you find syllables. Say the word. Clap each time you hear A, E, I, O, or U as a separate sound. The number of claps is the number of syllables.
- 4. The "Robot Speak Method" Rules Say a word as this robot.Pay attention to the pauses you make. How many parts did you break your word into?
- Ex.: robot = "ro" \*pause\* "bot"... 2 syllables Listen: pronouncing robot sound This is the number of syllables.
- 5. The "Written Method" Rules
- Count the number of vowels (A, E, I, O, U) in the word.
   Add 1 every time the letter 'y' makes the sound of a vowel (A, E, I, O, U).
   Subtract 1 for each silent vowel (like the silent 'e' at the end of a word).
- Subtract 1 for each diphthong or triphthong in the word.
   Diphthong: when 2 vowels make only 1 sound (au, oy, oo)
   Triphthong: when 3 vowels make only 1 sound (iou)
- c. Does the word end with "le" or "les?" Add 1 only if the letter before the "le" is a consonant.
- d. The number you get is the number of syllables in your word.

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers) 110

6. Writing the word in Kannada.

The number you get the vowel letter in kannada is the number of syllables in the word

#### Leave the consonant letter :

Ex : Book- ಬುಕ್- 1 syllables sschool- ಸೂಲ್,-1 syllableenter-ಎಂಟರ್-2 syllables 

#### Svllable Division Rules :

- Separate prefixes and suffixes from root words. 1.
- Ex: pre-view, work-ing, re-do, end-less, & out-ing
- 2. Are two (or more) consonants next to each other?
- Divide between the 1st and 2nd consonants.
- buf-fet, des-sert, ob-ject, ber-ry, & pil-grim Ex:
- Never split 2 consonants that make only 1 sound when pronounced together and aren't the same letter (i.e., 'ff').
- th, sh, ph, th, ch, & wh ex:
- 3. Is the consonant surrounded by vowels?
- Does the vowel have a long sound? (Like the 'i' in line)Divide before the consonant. ba-by, re-sult, i-vy, fro-zen, & Cu-pid Ex:
- Does the vowel have a short sound? (Like the 'i' in millDivide after the consonant.
- Ex: met-al, riv-er, mod-el, val-ue, & rav-age
- 4. Does the word end with 'ckle'?
- Divide right before the 'le.'
- Ex: tack-le, freck-le, tick-le, & buck-le
- Does the word end with 'le' (not 'ckle')?
- Is the letter before the 'le' a consonant? 5.
- Divide 1 letter before the 'le.'
- ap-ple, rum-ble, fa-ble, & ta-ble Ex:
- Is the letter before the 'le' a vowel?Do nothing.
- Ex: ale, scale, sale, file, & tile

## Example for

## monosvilable

act cause tongue crown ball	cat mourn plot make bat	book worse steel act bet	slew fear wish see sweep	base head one all life	vile riot school at rhythm	oft sword break
Bisyllabic or disyllabic words :						

cen-sure cae-sar wo-men edu-cate dor-mant en-ding sus-pect	sen-se cap-tives cri-tic ro-gramme out-break care-ful deep-est	va-liant ran-soms in-stead van-quish mo-ral de-vil pur-pose.	in-terred be-side de-lay se-nate dir-rect dia-mond	grie-vous dec-tate a-gain de-bate co-ward co-ward	
--	--	--	---	--	--

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

111

#### Trisyllabic Word

beau-ti-ful in-ten-tion mu-ti-ny be-lo-ved tes-ta-ment for-tu-nate coun-try-men con-si-der im-pli-cit e-ffec-tive ar-ma-ment to-mor-row lu-per-vcal le-ga-cy me-mo-ry be-lo-ved vic-to-ries be-ne-fit e-le-ment per-mi-ssion in-jus-tice

po-pu-lar lu-per-cal tes-ta-ment un-kind-ly tri-um-virs o-ra-tion as-sem-bly tra-di-tion ex-peri-ment com-pa-nion

## **Polysyllabic Word**

Ex:	n-tel-li-gent	in-i-ti-at-ve	per-so-ni-fi-ca-tion
	fun-da-men-tal-ly	in-fe-ri-o-ri-ty	syl-la-bi-fi-ca-tion

## **REPORTED SPEECH**

In English language we express words of speaker in two ways .i.e. Directly and indirectly. These are given name in grammar as

- 1. Direct Speech- The Direct Speech-Quoting the exact words of the speaker. Speaker's words are highlighted with double inverted comma(""). after the reporting verb comma (,) is used.
- Ex Divya said, "I am writing a letter".
- 2. Indirect Speech- Reporting of what a speaker said without quoting his exact words . he two parts are combined together by using conjunctions that or if / whether
- Ex- Divya said that she was writing a letter

## Points to be remembered

- 1. Removing the comma(,) and inverted commas ("").
- 2. If the reporting verb is in the Present or Future tense there is no change in the tense of the verb in the Indirect speech.

Direct speech: Anil says, "I eat a mango". Indirect speech : Anil says that he eats a mango.

D S- Anil will say, "I eat mango".

IDS: Anil will say that he eats mango

DS- Anil has said, I have eaten mango" IDS- Anil has said that he has eaten mango.

3. If Reporting Verb is in the Past Tense. The tense of the verbs in the reported speech or Indirect Speech must be generally changed.

## Change of tense in indirect speech.

2. Change of tense—--Present tense in the Direct speech is changed in to its correspondence past tense

Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
Simple Present	Simple Past
The boy said,"I study well	The boy said that he studied well
Present continuous	Past continuous
The boy said, "I am studying well"	The boy said that he was studying well
Present perfect	Past perfect
The boy said, "I have studied well"	The boy said that he had studied well
Present perfect continuous	Past perfect continuous
The boy said, "I have been studying well"	The boy said that he had been studying well.
Simple past	Past perfect
The boy said, "I studied well"	The boy said that he had studied well previous
yesterday".	day
Past continuous	Past perfect continuous
The boy said, "I was studying well"	The boy said that he had been studying well.
Past perfect	Un change
The boy said that, "I had studied well"	The boy said that he had studied well.
Past perfect continuous	Un changed
The boy said that, "I had been studying	The boy said that he had been studying well.
well"	

### 2. Change of model

Direct	Indirect
Will	would
Shall	should(asking for advice)
	Would (asking for information)
May	might
can	could / would be able to (future)
must	must (possibility)/ had to (obligation)

Time and place indication words are changed

Nearness becomes remoteness in indirect speech

Direct Speech	Indirect Speech	Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
Now	Then	Today	That day
Here	There	To night	That night
here after	there after	Last night	Previous night
this	that	Yesterday	The day before / previous day
these	those	Tomorrow	The next day / following day
ago	before	Last week	The week before / previous week
thus	SO	Next week	The week after / the following
			week

#### Change of pronouns :

First person pronouns in the direct speech change according to the subject of the reporting verb in the indirect speech . I persons are used in object / possessive form subject( Speaker) of reported speech should be changed in to it

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

Ex-	First person pronouns (I, we, me, mine, us, ours) normally change to the third person (he, she, they, his, her, their, him, her, them) depending on the subject which is used in the reported part.
Dire Dire Dire Dire	ct: He said, 'I am busy.'Indirect: He said that he was busy.ct: She said, 'I am unwell.'Indirect: She said that she was unwell.ct: I said, 'I will be late.'Indirect: I said that I would be late.ct: They said, 'We will not permit this.'Indirect: They said that they would not permit that.ct: He told her, "I want to meet my father."Indirect: He told her that he wanted to meet his father.ct: She said, "My son is cute"Indirect: She said that her son was cute.
2.	Second person pronouns (you, yours) change according to the person (hearer) of the object of the reporting verb. If no hearer is given normally it changes to first (I) person He said to her, "I love <b>you."(</b> her is a hearer ) He told her that <b>he</b> loved <b>her</b> ( You is used in object so hearer her changes to its object her) I said to him, " <b>You</b> are a stupid." I told him that <b>he</b> was a stupid ( you is in subject so hearer (him) changes in to its subject form 'he') She said to me , <b>you</b> are a brilliant student. She told me that <b>I</b> was a brilliant student.
	She said to us, <b>you</b> are clever persons so I like <b>your</b> attitude. She told us that <b>we</b> were clever persons so she liked <b>our</b> attitude
	He said to her, " <b>your</b> voice is more melodious than me". He told her that <b>her</b> voice was more melodious than him.
	She said to me, " <b>your</b> presentation is very nice" She told me that <b>my</b> presentation was very nice.
	They said, "you are successful in your work." They said that I was successful in my work ( no hearer in given in reported part so changed to I person)
	Third person pronouns in the direct speech will not change in the indirect speech. Direct: He said, ' <b>She</b> is a good girl.' Indirect: He said that <b>she</b> was a good girl.
	Direct: She said, ' <b>They</b> have invited us.' Indirect: She said that <b>they</b> had invited them.
	Direct: They said, ' <b>He</b> does not have the necessary qualifications.' Indirect: They said that <b>he</b> did not have the necessary qualifications.
Ass	ertive Sentence :
Ex-	Change the reporting verb 'said' and The other reported verbs like explained, stated, declare, describe, announced, replayed, commented, etc are used. If speaker and hearer are given in reported verb part told is used He said that (correct) He told <b>me</b> that (correct- hearer is present) He told that (Incorrect) The conjunction 'that' used

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

114

#### Example :

5.

- D S : Shamita said "I will work hard to get first class" 1.
  - IDS : Shamita said that she would work hard to get first class.
- 2. D S: He said to me "You can do this work"
- IDS: He told me that I could do that work.
- D S: He said to girl "I am glad to be here this evening" 3.
- IDS: He told girl that he was glad to be there that evening.
- DS: She said, "I don't like to go to the library " 4.
  - IDS : She said thatshe didn't liketo go to the library then.
  - D S: The king said to Daksha, "I didn't permit you to take anything from the palace."
  - IDS: The King told Daksha that he hadn't permitted her to take anything from the palace.

#### Imperative Sentence (Order or Request)

Imperative verb is changed into infinitive verb by adding preposition 'to' with positive sentence and 'not to used with negative sentence.

The reporting verbs like to tell, request, order, command, prayed, begged, told, suggest, advise, warned etc. are used depends on relation between speaker and hearer.

- 1. Direct: Boy said to mother, "Bring me a cup of tea" Indirect: Boy told mother to b ring him a cup of tea.
- Direct : He said he to her. "Be careful". 2.
- Indirect : He warned her to be careful.
- Direct : The teacher said to the boys, "Don't talk in the class". 3.
- Indirect : The teacher advised the boys not to talk in the class.
- 4. Direct : The old man said to them. "Please give me something to eat. I am hungry"
  - Indirect : The old man requested them to give him something to eat and said that he was hungry.
- Direct : The doctor said to the patient, 'Quit smoking.' 5.
- Indirect : The doctor advised the patient to quit smoking.
- Direct : He said to me, 'Post this letter at once.' 6.
- Indirect : He ordered me to post that letter at once.
- 7. Direct : My friend said to me, "please give your pen"
- Indirect : My friend requested me to give my pen. 8.
  - Direct : The officer said to servant, " don't allow public into the room"
  - Indirect : The officer order servant not to allow public into the room.

#### **Exclamatory Sentence :**

The exclamatory sentence should be changed into Assertive The conjunction 'that' is used. The reported verb said is changed into exclaimed. The feelings of interjection are used in the place of the interjections such as Oh, O,

Alas, how, what, hurrah.

- 1. Direct : She said, "O, what a beautiful flower it is!"
- Indirect : She exclaimed joyfully or (she exclaimed with joy) that it was a very beautiful flower.
- 2. Direct : "What a horrible sight!" the girl said. Indirect : The girl exclaimed that it was a very horrible sight.

3.	Direct :	"Alas! I have broken my brother's watch" said he.
	Indirect :	He exclaimed sorrowfully or (exclaimed with sorrow) that he had broken
		his brothers watch

- 4. Direct : The boy said "wow, How beautiful she is!"
- Indirect : The boy exclaimed joyfully that she was very beautiful.
- 5. Direct : The boy said, 'Hurrah! We have won the match.'
- Indirect : The boy exclaimed with joy that they had won the match.
- 6. Direct : The old man said, 'Alas! I have lost my purse.'
- Indirect : The old man exclaimed with sorrow that he had lost his purse.
- 7. Direct : The child said, 'Ha, What a beautiful sight!'
- Indirect : The child exclaimed with delight that it was a very beautiful sight.
- 8. Direct : The boy said, 'O, How beautiful the rainbow is!'
- Indirect : The girl exclaimed with surprise that the rainbow was very beautiful.
- 9. Direct : 'Hurrah!' cried the boy, 'I have won a prize.'
- Indirect : The boy exclaimed with delight that he had done a prize
- 10. Direct : He said, "oh, It's a bad news"
  - Indirect : He exclaimed with sorrow that it was a very bad news

## Interrogative Sentence (Questions)

- · Reported verbs like , asked, questioned, wanted to know, enquired, etc are used
- Interrogative sentence should be changed into Assertive.
- In WH questions The same WH word used in the reporting part in used as the conduction
- In Yes/No type questions 'If /whether 'is used as the conjunction
- Direct : She said to me, 'Why did you come with us?' Indirect : She asked me Why I had come with them. (meaning oriented -She asked reason for my visit with them)
- 2. Direct : She said to me, 'Are you unwell?'
  - Indirect : She asked me if I was unwell. Meaning oriented- she enquired about my health.
- 3. Direct : She said to him, 'Am I to wait for you till evening?'
- Indirect : She enquired him if she was to wait for him till evening.
- 4. Direct : I said to him, 'Why didn't you present at the meeting yesterday?'
- Indirect : I asked him Why he had presented at the meeting the day before (or the previous day).
- 5. Direct : The woman asked the stranger, 'Should I help you?'
- Indirect : The woman asked the stranger whether she should help him.
- 6. Direct : I said to him, 'Who are you?'
- Indirect : I asked him who he was.
- 7. Direct : The mother said to the daughter, 'Don't you know where Babu is?'
- Indirect : The mother asked the daughter whether she didn't know where John was.
- 8. Direct : 'Have you anything to say on behalf of the accused?,' said the judge to the lawyer.
- Indirect : The judge enquired of the lawyer if he had anything to say on behalf of the
  Direct : She She asked Heena whether she had not telephoned her in the morning.
  Indirect : She said to Heena, "Didn't I telephone you in the morning?"

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

10.	Direct : Teacher said, "Can you solve this problem?" Indirect : The teacher asked if she could solve that problem.					
11.	Direct : He said to me, 'Where do you live?' Indirect : He asked me where I lived.					
12.	Direct : Mother said to me, 'What are you doing there?' Indirect : Mother asked me what I was doing there.					
13.	Direct : Father asked," why don't you buy books?" Indirect : father asked why I didn't buy books.					
14.	Direct : Head master asked students, Do you like school" Indirect : Head master asked if / whether students liked school.					
15.	Direct : I said to my friend. "Won't you help me to carry this box?" Indirect : I asked my friend if he would not help me to carry that box.					
16.	Direct : Divya asked to Shameeta "How often do you go to the theatre?" Indirect : Divya asked to Shameeta how often he went to the theatre.					
Read	the conversation. Based on it, Complete the reported form given below.					
	Father : Why aren't you doing your homework, Joseph?					
	Joseph : They didn't give us any home work today Daddy.					
	Joseph's father asked him why					
	a					
	Joseph replied that they hand n't					
	b Ans.: a. he wasn't doing his home work					
b.	given them any home work that day.					
II.	Read the passage. Report the questions given in the box and complete the story :					
	Bhola asked his friends They said they had heard the world would come to an end the next evening. Bhola asked them They said, 'The priest'. Ans. : Why they were so serious Who had told them					
iii.	Read the conversation. Based on it complete the reported form given below:					
	Rajev : How are you? Rakesh : I'm fine, you? Rajeev : I'm fine, thank you. Why did you go to Delhi last week? Rakesh : I went to Delhi to see the minister. Rajeev asked Rakesh why					
iv.	Preethi : Will you please help me to cross the road? Bharathi : I will help you to cross the road. Preethi asked Bharathi whether Bharathi replied that Ans. : She would help her to cross the road.					

She would help her to cross the road

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

117

v.	Chand : Hello, Prashant Prashant : How are you? Chand : I'm fine. Thank you. Are you working in this company? Prashant : Yes, I am. I joined this firm last year.
	Chand and Prashant greeted each other. Chand asked Prashant Prashanth replied he
vi.	Ans. : If he was working in that company had joined that firm the previous year. Child: I want a balloon, which I can release into the air. Balloon man : Which colour balloon do you want? A child told a balloon man that The balloon man Ans.: a. he wanted a balloon which he could release into the air b. asked which colour balloon he wanted
vii.	Son : Why are they asking for money, mummy? Mother : It is because they are poor, darling On seeing the beggars the son When the mother replied that Ans.: a. asked his mother why they were asking for money b. it was because they were poor
viii.	Captain : Do you know how to play cricket? Laksh : Never had a chance to learn it. The captain asked Laksh Laksh replied Ans.: a.if he knew how to pay cricket b.that he had never had a chance to learn it
ix.	Nishchu : Hi Lakshya how are you? Lakshya : Life's rather tough. I need a job. Nishchu on meeting Lakshya asked Lakshya replied Ans.: a. how he was b.that he was on the look out for a job
х.	Ans.: a. now ne was       b.that ne was on the look out for a job         Mother : I have washed the car for you today         Daughter : Thank you, Mom         The mother told the daughter that         The daughter         Ans.: a. she had washed the car for her that day also         b.thanked her mother
xi	Boss : Are there any more files? Peon : Yes sir Boss asked the peon The puen
	Ans.: a. if there were any more files. b. replied respectfully yes.

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

118

xii	Wife : Please stop this work immediately Husband : I have to meet the deadline or the editor will give the work to some body else. The wife requested wife requested Husband
	Ans. : a. her husband to stop that work b. replied that he had to meet.
xiv.	Astrologer : Will you give me five rupees. If you find my answers satisfactory Customer : No The astrologer asked the customer
	The customer Ans.: a. Whether he would give him five rupees if he found his answers satisfactory. b. replied no (negatively)

## PREPOSITIONS

Prepositions are the words which are used to connect the different nouns, pronouns and phrases in a sentence. The preposition usually indicates the relation between the words it is connecting.

There are two very important rules to remember when using prepositions.

The certain propositions must be used to make the relationships between words in a sentence clear. Most prepositions are interchangeable but only to a certain extent.

They are always followed by a "noun", never followed by a verb.

#### By "noun" we include:

Noun (dog, money, love) Proper Noun (name) (London, Mary) Pronoun (you, him, us) Noun Group (my first car) Gerund (swimming)

## There are Five groups of prepositions

- a. Prepositions of place,
- c. Preposition of direction.
- b. Preposition of position
- b. Prepositions of time.
- e. Prepositions for other relationships.

SOME COMMON PREPOSITIONS				
PLACE	POSITION	DIRECTION	TIME	OTHER
above	beyond	on	after	except
across	by	opposite	before	as
along	down	out (of)	at	like
among	from	outside	by	about
at	in	over	for	with
away from	in front of	around	during	without
behind	inside	through	from	by
below	into	to	in	for
beside	near	towards		despite
between	off	under		in spite of
		up		

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

119

# Use of Prepositions :

## USe of At

- \* before the particular place or things
- ex- at the corner, at the door, at the end of the street, at temple, at Hangal....etc
  \* before clock time.
- ex- at 6am, at 12 pm, at 10 pm...etc
- before the point of the time in a day ex- at down, at noon, at midnight, at sunset, at sunrise.
- before the name of all festivals (national or religious)
- ex- at Diwali, at independence day,...etc
- \* before the name of buildings
- ex- at WTC, at school, at plaza, at restaurant, .....etc
- \* to say which thing or person or an action is directed towards/intended for.. ex-I gazed at the sky, don't shout at me, she threw the ball at him,....etc
- to show price, age, speed,...
   ex- I got the job at age of 23, I sold the book at 50 Rs, he drives the car at 100km/h....
- to say who or what causes an action or feeling
   ex-she laughed at my jokes, teacher felt angry at my misbehavior,...
- to say ones skill or success
- ex-I am good at sports, she is good at study, .....
- to say someone or something in a particular state.
- ex- he is at danger, two nations are at war, many people are still at risk,.....

## IN

- used before parts of the day.
- ex-in the morning, in the evening, in the night, in the afternoon.
- used before period of time
   ex- in ten minutes, in an hour, in my life, in a year, in a month, in a week,....etc
- used before month, seasons, year, centuries
   ex- in January, in rainy seasons, in summer, in 21 century, ...etc
- used with position or place when someone or something is inside the large place or thing. ex- I am in the home, in the class, in the box, ...etc
- used with larger area while at is used for smaller area.
   ex- I am at bus stand in Hangal. she is living at h\Haveri in Karnataka,...
- \* uses before the names of country, state, place, city, squares.....
- ex- in Karnataka, in Hubli, in India, in M G circle,.....
- to say about shape, arrangements, cause of something or someone.
   ex- we stand in circle, in round, triangle, he was died in accident,...
- to say how something is done or happened.
- ex- in successful way, in unhygienic way, in silently, .....
- \* to name books, documents, film where someone or something appears
- ex- i read it in newspaper, novel, in Bhagavad-Gita, in Ramayana, ....
- \* wearing something. ex- in pant, in suit, in sari,
- doing or effecting in particular kind of job ex-in politics, in sports, in machinery, in industry public work,...

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers) 1

120

### ON

- Used before dates Ex- on 10 January, on April 2nd, .....
- before the names of the days Ex- on Sunday, on Monday, .....
   used with touching a surface or attached
- Ex- on table, on chair, on the floor, on the ground, on wall,...
- \* before the names of street Ex- on main road, on M G Road, on P B Road,...
- \* with musical instruments, radio, T V, recorded instruments
- Ex- on harmonium, on flute, on TV, on radio,
   telling about a particular subject
- Ex-write a speech on goals of education, on Indian history, on women empowerment,...
- fuel or transport ex- on bus on train on plane, on petrol, on electricity, on solar energy
   to say particular position in relation to something else
  - Ex- on your left, on your right, on your opposite side, on its back side,.....

## OF

- Used for cause or reason
  - ex-The bird died of grief, afraid of fall, fear of teachers, died of cancer,...
- for origin or possession
   ex-people of India, leg of table, sound of animal, resource of India.......
   connection or relation
- ex- head master of school, president on India, herd of cows, bunch of keys.....
   to describe the quality / features of someone or something
- ex- women of great substance, man of determination, beauty of truth,.
- \* used to say whole thing of which something is part it ( to say what something contains)
  - ex- a cup of tea, a pack of cigarette, tents of refugee, rack of books...
- to say one of several people or thing they belong to or connected with someone ex-a friend of mine, a book of religion,

#### OFF

- Used to show separation or detached condition ex-1 took off two letters, keep off, fall off, get off, go off,....
- \* to indicate absent ex-its my day off today, I asked Saturday off to the manager, he is off tomorrow,...
- to show the short distance away from the place ex- the bag is off the table, our school is just off the main road, its just off the airport,.

## WITH

- \* used to denote an instrument in passive voice
  - ex- The man was killed with knife, filled with happiness, beaten with stick,.....
- to indicate company
   ex- I came with her, spend time with my friends, discussion with teachers,....
- to indicate particular feeling or physical feeling
- ex- trembling with fear, beaming with happiness, weeping with sad,....
- to show carrying something /possessing something ex-he is going with bag, book with nice pictures, girl with long hair,....
- to show what covers /fill something ex-box with things, bottle is filled with water, cover the book with paper,...

121

#### ΒY

- \* Used before object in the passive voice
- Ex- It is given by me, ..
- \* to show nearness/beside
- ex-I sat by my mother, she passed by the side of me, our school is by the bus stand,...
  to show the method / means
- ex- he came by bus, by sea, by air, by walk, by phone, by post,...
- \* used before the particular time of future.
- ex- by this evening, by end of this week, by this month, by at 5 pm, ...
- \* used to say gradual change ex- year by year, month by month, day by day, ....

## FROM

- \* where/when something starts
- ex- from school, from 1st April to 10 April,...
- \* to tell the distance
- ex-I am standing away from my friend, its little away from here ....
- to tell the place/position when watching
- ex- from the top of the hill, from my house,..
- \* to show the origin ex- I bought it from the shop, select from the list,....
- \* being removed ex-I deleted his name from the list, set out from the class,...
- \* to tell the place birth / work/ where someone lives
- ex- she came from London, the person from India went to U S A.,...
- \* to tell prevented / forbidden
- ex- he was stopped from doing work, she is forbidden from entering city,..
- \* sent / given by someone
- ex- i received a call from my friend, we need to get permition from teacher,...
- \* cause- to state the cause of something. ex- suffering from fever,

## то

- used to show where someone /something goes ex- to market, to school
   used to show purposes, event / activity for which you go somewhere
- ex- go to school to study, I went there to buy new things,...
  to say who receives something / is told / shown something.
- ex- I told to him, don't show to anybody, I gave a flower to her,....
- \* used in between the numbers ex- 10 to 15, 50 to 60,.....
- \* to show particular time / event
- ex- I work from Monday to Saturday, from evening to midnight,...
- to show how much time is before particular time / event.
- ex- hardly 15 to your exam, it's just five minutes to prayer, ...
- \* to show the direction where something is in relation to something else. ex- our school is to the north to Hangal, to the east ...

## FOR

- used to show duration of time.
- ex- I study for 10 hours, for 1 hour, for 2years, for a century,...
- \* Recipients- where something / someone is intended to use or so something. ex- letter for you, I sent message for you, he prepares it for the students,..
- \* Destination ex-I am leaving for Mumbai, the bus is for Bangalore,...
- \* Preparations ex- study for exam , get ready for dinner, ...

SINCE         *       used to tell point of time. (usually in perfect tense)         ex-since yesterday, since morning, since last year, since 1947, since Januaryetc         *       usually it follows the time expressions. Ex-since 4 oclock, since 6 am etc         1.       We are very excited our trip to Spain next week.         2.       I am very fond drinking green tea.         3.       Almost all politicians were involved having a meeting with you next week.         5.       At the moment, she is recovering having a famous scientist one day.         7.       My cousin is married a famous American.         8.       I am responsible the low prices offered by the new shop         10.       I was not quite satisfied the low prices offered by the new shop         11.       The president was thankful everyone who helped in the campaign         12.       Everyone in this town will benefit the low prices offered by the new shop         13.       For two full days, the man was fighting the low hast he said         15.       She insisted helping me with the dishes.         16.       Almost all car companies care the environment         17.       Wearing a seat belt can protect you being killed in a car.         18.       Ten people were killed when a bus collided a car.		
<ul> <li>ex-walking is good for health, its not for child, this is prepared for youth,</li> <li>to tell the price of things ex- he sold it for 2000 Rs, get it for 50 Rs,</li> <li>SINCE</li> <li>used to tell point of time.( usually in perfect tense)</li> <li>ex-since yesterday, since morning, since last year, since 1947, since Januaryetc</li> <li>usually it follows the time expressions. Ex-since 4 oclock, since 6 an etc</li> <li>1 am very fond out rip to Spain next week.</li> <li>2 I am very fond drinking green tea.</li> <li>3. Almost all politicians were involved out rip to Spain next week.</li> <li>5. At the moment, she is recovering har injuries.</li> <li>6. I'm dreaming becoming a famous scientist one day.</li> <li>7. My cousin is married a famous American.</li> <li>8. I am responsible the low prices offered by the new shop</li> <li>10. I was not quite satisfied the exam results.</li> <li>11. The president was thankful everyone who helped in the campaign</li> <li>12. Everyone in this town will benefit the new hospital</li> <li>13. For two full days, the man was fighting the low prices offered by the new shop</li> <li>14. My dad shouted me because I didn't do what he said</li> <li>15. She insisted helping me with the dishes.</li> <li>16. Almost all car companies care helping me with the dishes.</li> <li>17. Wearing a seat belt can protect you being killed in a car.</li> <li>18. Ten people were killed when a bus collided a car.</li> <li>19. The customers came to the shop to complain their service.</li> <li>Coordinating conjunctions always go between the words or phrases that they are connecting.</li> <li>Ex: Word +Word Phrase + Phrase Clause + Clause There are seven coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS F = for A = and N = nor B = but O = or Y = yet S = so</li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction</li> <li>19. Put a comma bef</li></ul>	*	
<ul> <li>to tell the price of things ex- he sold it for 2000 Rs, get it for 50 Rs,</li> <li>SINCE</li> <li>used to tell point of time. (usually in perfect tense) <ul> <li>ex-since yesterday, since morning, since last year, since 1947, since Januaryetc</li> <li>usually it follows the time expressions. Ex- since 4 oclock, since 6 am etc</li> </ul> </li> <li>I am very fond drinking green tea.</li> <li>Almost all politicians were involved having a meeting with you next week.</li> <li>At the moment, she is recovering having a meeting with you next week.</li> <li>At the moment, she is recovering having a meeting with you next week.</li> <li>At the moment, she is recovering having a famous scientist one day.</li> <li>My cousin is married a famous American.</li> <li>I am responsible training the new recruits.</li> <li>Many people took advantage the low prices offered by the new shop</li> <li>I was not quite satisfied everyone who helped in the campaign</li> <li>Everyone in this town will benefit the new hospital</li> <li>So for two full days, the man was fighting the new hospital</li> <li>She insisted helping me with the dishes.</li> <li>Almost all car companies care helping me with the dishes.</li> <li>Almost all car companies care helping me with the dishes.</li> <li>Almost all car companies care helping me with the dishes.</li> <li>The pustomers came to the shop to complain their service.</li> <li>Coordinating conjunctions always go between the words or phrases that they are connecting.</li> <li>Ex: Word +Word Phrase + Phrase Clause + Clause There are seven coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS F = for A = and N = nor B = but O = or Y = yet S = so</li> </ul> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect: I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car. Correct: She likes apples, and bananas.</li> <l< td=""><td>*</td><td></td></l<>	*	
SINCE         *       used to tell point of time.( usually in perfect tense)         ex-since yesterday, since morning, since last year, since 1947, since Januaryetc         usually it follows the time expressions. Ex-since 4 oclock, since 6 am etc         1.       We are very excited durinking green tea.         1.       Almost all politicians were involved thring a meeting with you next week.         2.       I am very fond drinking green tea.         3.       Almost all politicians were involved having a meeting with you next week.         5.       At the moment, she is recovering having a meeting with you next week.         6.       I'm dreaming becoming a famous scientist one day.         7.       My cousin is married becoming a famous American.         8.       I am responsible the low prices offered by the new shop         10.       I was not quite satisfied the low prices offered by the new shop         11.       The president was thankful everyone who helped in the campaign         12.       Everyone in this town will benefit the low prices offered by the new shop         13.       For two full days, the man was fighting the environment         14.       My dad shouted neeteestas         15.       She insisted	*	
<ul> <li>* used to tell point of time.( usually in perfect tense) ex-since yesterday, since morning, since last year, since 1947, since Januaryetc</li> <li>* usually it follows the time expressions. Ex- since 4 oclock, since 6 am etc</li> <li>1. We are very excited our trip to Spain next week.</li> <li>2. I am very fond drinking green tea.</li> <li>3. Almost all politicians were involved having a meeting with you next week.</li> <li>5. At the moment, she is recovering harmous scientist one day.</li> <li>7. My cousin is married becoming a famous scientist one day.</li> <li>7. My cousin is married having a meeting with you next week.</li> <li>8. I am responsible training the new recruits.</li> <li>9. Many people took advantage the low prices offered by the new shop</li> <li>10. I was not quite satisfied the low prices offered by the new shop</li> <li>11. The president was thankful everyone who helped in the campaign</li> <li>12. Everyone in this town will benefit the new hospital</li> <li>13. For two full days, the man was fighting the environment</li> <li>14. My dad shouted me because I didn't do what he said</li> <li>15. She insisted helping me with the dishes.</li> <li>16. Almost all car companies care the environment</li> <li>17. Wearing a seat belt can protect you being killed in a car.</li> <li>18. The customers came to the shop to complain their service.</li> <li>Coordinating conjunctions always go between the words or phrases that they are connecting.</li> <li>Ex: Word +Word Phrase + Phrase Clause + Clause</li> <li>There are seven coordinating conjunction is to remember FANBOYS F = for a and n = nor</li> <li>B = but e nor</li> <li>B = but</li></ul>	CINI	
<ul> <li>ex-since yesterday, since morning, since last year, since 1947, since Januaryetc</li> <li>usually it follows the time expressions. Ex-since 4 oclock, since 6 am etc</li> <li>We are very excited our trip to Spain next week.</li> <li>I am very fond drinking green tea.</li> <li>Almost all politicians were involved having a meeting with you next week.</li> <li>At the moment, she is recovering having a famous scientist one day.</li> <li>My cousin is married a famous American.</li> <li>I am responsible training the new recruits.</li> <li>Many people took advantage the low prices offered by the new shop</li> <li>I was not quite satisfied everyone who helped in the campaign</li> <li>Everyone in this town will benefit everyone who helped in the campaign</li> <li>Everyone in this town will benefit the new hospital</li> <li>For two full days, the man was fighting his life.</li> <li>Almost all car companies care the environment</li> <li>Wearing a seat belt can protect you being killed in a car.</li> <li>The people were killed when a bus collided a car.</li> <li>The customers came to the shop to complain their service.</li> <li>Coordinating conjunctions always go between the words or phrases that they are connecting.</li> <li>Ex: Word +Word Phrase + Phrase Clause + Clause There are seven coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS F = for A = and N = nor B = but O = or Y = yet S = so</li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction</li> <li>Put a comma before the coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect: I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car.</li> <li>Correct: She likes apples, and bananas.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma</li> </ul>	211N	
<ul> <li>usually it follows the time expressions. Ex- since 4 oclock, since 6 am etc</li> <li>We are very excited our trip to Spain next week.</li> <li>I am very fond drinking green tea.</li> <li>Almost all politicians were involved having a meeting with you next week.</li> <li>At the moment, she is recovering having a famous scientist one day.</li> <li>My cousin is married becoming a famous scientist one day.</li> <li>My cousin is married training the new recruits.</li> <li>Many people took advantage the low prices offered by the new shop</li> <li>I was not quite satisfied the low prices offered by the new shop</li> <li>I was not quite satisfied the everyone who helped in the campaign</li> <li>Everyone in this town will benefit the new hospital</li> <li>For two full days, the man was fighting the environment</li> <li>Waaring a seat belt can protect you being killed in a car.</li> <li>The people were killed when a bus collided a car.</li> <li>The customers came to the shop to complain their service.</li> <li>Coordinating conjunctions always go between the words or phrases that they are connecting.</li> <li>Word +Word Phrase + Phrase Clause + Clause There are seven coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS F = for A = and N = nor</li> <li>B = but O = or Y = yet S = so</li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>K. When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma Lincorrect: I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car.</li> <li>Correct: She likes apples, and bananas.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ul>	~	
<ol> <li>We are very excited our trip to Spain next week.</li> <li>Iam very fond drinking green tea.</li> <li>Almost all politicians were involved having a meeting with you next week.</li> <li>I am looking forward having a meeting with you next week.</li> <li>At the moment, she is recovering her injuries.</li> <li>I'm dreaming becoming a famous scientist one day.</li> <li>My cousin is married a famous American.</li> <li>I am responsible the low prices offered by the new shop</li> <li>I was not quite satisfied the exam results.</li> <li>The president was thankful everyone who helped in the campaign</li> <li>Everyone in this town will benefit the new hospital</li> <li>For two full days, the man was fighting the new hospital</li> <li>She insisted helping me with the dishes.</li> <li>Almost all car companies care helping me with the dishes.</li> <li>Almost all car companies care helping me with the dishes.</li> <li>Almost all car companies care helping me with the dishes.</li> <li>The people were killed when a bus collided a car.</li> <li>The customers came to the shop to complain heir service.</li> <li>Coordinating conjunctions always go between the words or phrases that they are connecting.</li> <li>Ex: Word +Word Phrase + Phrase Clause + Clause There are seven coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS F = for A = and N = nor B = but O = or Y = yet S = so</li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect: I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car.</li> <li>Correct: She likes apples, and bananas.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma independent clauses.</li> </ol>	*	
<ul> <li>Almost all politicians were involvedhaving a meeting with you next week.</li> <li>I am looking forwardhaving a meeting with you next week.</li> <li>At the moment, she is recoveringher injuries.</li> <li>I'm dreamingbecoming a famous scientist one day.</li> <li>My cousin is marriedtraining the new recruits.</li> <li>I am responsibletraining the new recruits.</li> <li>Many people took advantagethe low prices offered by the new shop</li> <li>I was not quite satisfiedthe exam results.</li> <li>The president was thankfuleveryone who helped in the campaign</li> <li>Everyone in this town will benefitthe exam results.</li> <li>For two full days, the man was fightingthe enw hospital</li> <li>She insistedhelping me with the dishes.</li> <li>Almost all car companies carethe environment</li> <li>Wearing a seat belt can protect youbeing killed in a car.</li> <li>The people were killed when a bus collided a car.</li> <li>The customers came to the shop to complaintheir service.</li> <li>Coordinating conjunctions always go between the words or phrases that they are connecting.</li> <li>Word +Word Phrase +Phrase Clause + Clause There are seven coordinating conjunctions in the English language. An easy way to remember the coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS F = for A = and N = nor B = but O = or Y = yet S = so</li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>Incorrect: I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car. Correct: I want to go see a movie, but my sister has my car.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ul>	1.	
<ul> <li>Almost all politicians were involvedhaving a meeting with you next week.</li> <li>I am looking forwardhaving a meeting with you next week.</li> <li>At the moment, she is recoveringher injuries.</li> <li>I'm dreamingbecoming a famous scientist one day.</li> <li>My cousin is marriedtraining the new recruits.</li> <li>I am responsibletraining the new recruits.</li> <li>Many people took advantagethe low prices offered by the new shop</li> <li>I was not quite satisfiedthe exam results.</li> <li>The president was thankfuleveryone who helped in the campaign</li> <li>Everyone in this town will benefitthe exam results.</li> <li>For two full days, the man was fightingthe enw hospital</li> <li>She insistedhelping me with the dishes.</li> <li>Almost all car companies carethe environment</li> <li>Wearing a seat belt can protect youbeing killed in a car.</li> <li>The people were killed when a bus collided a car.</li> <li>The customers came to the shop to complaintheir service.</li> <li>Coordinating conjunctions always go between the words or phrases that they are connecting.</li> <li>Word +Word Phrase +Phrase Clause + Clause There are seven coordinating conjunctions in the English language. An easy way to remember the coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS F = for A = and N = nor B = but O = or Y = yet S = so</li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>Incorrect: I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car. Correct: I want to go see a movie, but my sister has my car.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ul>	2.	I am very fond drinking green tea.
<ul> <li>I am looking forward having a meeting with you next week.</li> <li>At the moment, she is recovering her injuries.</li> <li>I'm dreaming becoming a famous scientist one day.</li> <li>My cousin is married a famous American.</li> <li>I am responsible training the new recruits.</li> <li>Many people took advantage the low prices offered by the new shop</li> <li>I was not quite satisfied everyone who helped in the campaign</li> <li>Everyone in this town will benefit the new hospital</li> <li>For two full days, the man was fighting the new hospital</li> <li>For two full days, the man was fighting the new hospital</li> <li>She insisted the helping me with the dishes.</li> <li>Almost all car companies care the environment</li> <li>Wearing a seat belt can protect you being killed in a car.</li> <li>Ten people were killed when a bus collided a car.</li> <li>The customers came to the shop to complain their service.</li> <li>Coordinating conjunctions always go between the words or phrases that they are connecting.</li> <li>Ex: Word +Word Phrase + Phrase Clause + Clause There are seven coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS F = for A = and N = nor B = but O = or Y = yet S = so</li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction</li> <li>Put a comma before the coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect: I want to go see a movie, but my sister has my car.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ul>	3.	Almost all politicians were involved the scandal.
<ul> <li>At the moment, she is recoveringher injuries.</li> <li>I'm dreamingbecoming a famous scientist one day.</li> <li>My cousin is marrieda famous American.</li> <li>I am responsibletraining the new recruits.</li> <li>Many people took advantagethe low prices offered by the new shop</li> <li>I was not quite satisfied the low prices offered by the new shop</li> <li>I was not quite satisfied the low prices offered by the new shop</li> <li>I was not quite satisfied the low prices offered by the new shop</li> <li>I was not quite satisfied the low prices offered by the new shop</li> <li>I was not quite satisfied the everyone who helped in the campaign</li> <li>Everyone in this town will benefit the new hospital</li> <li>For two full days, the man was fighting the new hospital</li> <li>She insisted helping me with the dishes.</li> <li>Almost all car companies care the environment</li> <li>Wearing a seat belt can protect you being killed in a car.</li> <li>The people were killed when a bus collided a car.</li> <li>The customers came to the shop to complain their service.</li> <li>Coordinating conjunctions always go between the words or phrases that they are connecting.</li> <li>Ex: Word +Word Phrase + Phrase Clause + Clause There are seven coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS F = for A = and N = nor B = but O = or Y = yet S = so</li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction</li> <li>Put a comma before the coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect: I want to go see a movie, but my sister has my car.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ul>	4.	I am looking forward having a meeting with you next week.
<ul> <li>My cousin is married a famous American.</li> <li>I am responsible training the new recruits.</li> <li>Many people took advantage the low prices offered by the new shop</li> <li>I was not quite satisfied the exam results.</li> <li>The president was thankful everyone who helped in the campaign</li> <li>Everyone in this town will benefit the new hospital</li> <li>For two full days, the man was fighting his life.</li> <li>My dad shouted me because I didn't do what he said</li> <li>She insisted helping me with the dishes.</li> <li>Almost all car companies care being killed in a car.</li> <li>The people were killed when a bus collided a car.</li> <li>The customers came to the shop to complain their service.</li> <li>Coordinating conjunctions always go between the words or phrases that they are connecting.</li> <li>Ex: Word +Word Phrase + Phrase Clause + Clause There are seven coordinating conjunctions in the English language. An easy way to remember the coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS F = for A = and N = nor B = but O = or Y = yet S = so</li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction</li> <li>Put a comma before the coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect: I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car.</li> <li>Correct: She likes apples, and bananas.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ul>	5.	At the moment, she is recovering her injuries.
<ul> <li>8.   am responsible training the new recruits.</li> <li>9. Many people took advantage the low prices offered by the new shop</li> <li>10. I was not quite satisfied the exam results.</li> <li>11. The president was thankful everyone who helped in the campaign</li> <li>12. Everyone in this town will benefit the new hospital</li> <li>13. For two full days, the man was fighting the new hospital</li> <li>13. For two full days, the man was fighting the new hospital</li> <li>13. For two full days, the man was fighting the new hospital</li> <li>13. For two full days, the man was fighting the new hospital</li> <li>13. For two full days, the man was fighting the new hospital</li> <li>14. My dad shouted helping me with the dishes.</li> <li>16. Almost all car companies care the environment</li> <li>17. Wearing a seat belt can protect you being killed in a car.</li> <li>18. Ten people were killed when a bus collided a car.</li> <li>19. The customers came to the shop to complain their service.</li> <li>Coordinating conjunctions always go between the words or phrases that they are connecting.</li> <li>Ex: Word +Word Phrase + Phrase Clause + Clause There are seven coordinating conjunctions in the English language. An easy way to remember the coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS F = for A = and N = nor B = but O = or Y = yet S = so</li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction</li> <li>10. Put a comma before the coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect: I want to go see a movie, but my sister has my car. Correct: I want to go see a movie, but my sister has my car.</li> <li>2. When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas.</li> <li>3. When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in the proceed the proceed the procee</li></ul>	6.	I'm dreaming becoming a famous scientist one day.
<ul> <li>Many people took advantage the low prices offered by the new shop</li> <li>I was not quite satisfied the exam results.</li> <li>The president was thankful everyone who helped in the campaign</li> <li>Everyone in this town will benefit the new hospital</li> <li>For two full days, the man was fighting his life.</li> <li>My dad shouted me because I didn't do what he said</li> <li>She insisted helping me with the dishes.</li> <li>Almost all car companies care the environment</li> <li>Wearing a seat belt can protect you being killed in a car.</li> <li>The people were killed when a bus collided a car.</li> <li>The customers came to the shop to complain their service.</li> <li>Coordinating conjunctions always go between the words or phrases that they are connecting.</li> <li>Ex: Word +Word Phrase + Phrase Clause + Clause There are seven coordinating conjunctions in the English language. An easy way to remember the coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS F = for A = and N = nor B = but O = or Y = yet S = so</li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction</li> <li>Put a comma before the coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect : I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car. Correct: I want to go see a movie, but my sister has my car.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in the sum of a condinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in the sum of a condinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in the sum of a condinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in the sum of a condinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in the sum of a condinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in the sum of a condinating</li></ul>	7.	My cousin is married a famous American.
<ol> <li>I was not quite satisfied the exam results.</li> <li>The president was thankful everyone who helped in the campaign</li> <li>Everyone in this town will benefit the new hospital</li> <li>For two full days, the man was fighting his life.</li> <li>My dad shouted ne because I didn't do what he said</li> <li>She insisted helping me with the dishes.</li> <li>Almost all car companies care the environment</li> <li>Wearing a seat belt can protect you being killed in a car.</li> <li>Ten people were killed when a bus collided a car.</li> <li>The customers came to the shop to complain their service.</li> <li>Coordinating conjunctions always go between the words or phrases that they are connecting.</li> <li>Ex: Word +Word Phrase + Phrase Clause + Clause There are seven coordinating conjunctions in the English language. An easy way to remember the coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS F = for A = and N = nor B = but O = or Y = yet S = so</li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction</li> <li>Put a comma before the coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect : I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ol>		I am responsible training the new recruits.
<ol> <li>The president was thankful</li></ol>		Many people took advantage the low prices offered by the new shop
<ul> <li>12. Everyone in this town will benefit the new hospital</li> <li>13. For two full days, the man was fighting his life.</li> <li>14. My dad shouted me because I didn't do what he said</li> <li>15. She insisted helping me with the dishes.</li> <li>16. Almost all car companies care the environment</li> <li>17. Wearing a seat belt can protect you being killed in a car.</li> <li>18. Ten people were killed when a bus collided a car.</li> <li>19. The customers came to the shop to complain their service.</li> <li>Coordinating conjunctions always go between the words or phrases that they are connecting.</li> <li>Ex: Word +Word Phrase + Phrase Clause + Clause There are seven coordinating conjunctions in the English language. An easy way to remember the coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS F = for A = and N = nor B = but O = or Y = yet S = so</li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction</li> <li>1. Put a comma before the coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect : I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car.</li> <li>Correct: I want to go see a movie, but my sister has my car.</li> <li>2. When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas.</li> <li>3. When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ul>		I was not quite satisfied the exam results.
<ul> <li>13. For two full days, the man was fightinghis life.</li> <li>14. My dad shoutedhelping me with the dishes.</li> <li>15. She insistedhelping me with the dishes.</li> <li>16. Almost all car companies carehelping me with the dishes.</li> <li>17. Wearing a seat belt can protect youbeing killed in a car.</li> <li>18. Ten people were killed when a bus collided a car.</li> <li>19. The customers came to the shop to complaintheir service. Coordinating conjunctions always go between the words or phrases that they are connecting.</li> <li>Ex: Word +Word Phrase + Phrase Clause + Clause There are seven coordinating conjunctions in the English language. An easy way to remember the coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS F = for A = and N = nor B = but O = or Y = yet S = so</li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction</li> <li>1. Put a comma before the coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect: I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car. Correct: I want to go see a movie, but my sister has my car.</li> <li>2. When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas.</li> <li>3. When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ul>		The president was thankful everyone who helped in the campaign
<ul> <li>My dad shouted me because I didn't do what he said</li> <li>She insisted helping me with the dishes.</li> <li>Almost all car companies care the environment</li> <li>Wearing a seat belt can protect you being killed in a car.</li> <li>Ten people were killed when a bus collided a car.</li> <li>The customers came to the shop to complain their service.</li> <li>Coordinating conjunctions always go between the words or phrases that they are connecting.</li> <li>Ex: Word +Word Phrase + Phrase Clause + Clause There are seven coordinating conjunctions in the English language. An easy way to remember the coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS F = for A = and N = nor B = but O = or Y = yet S = so</li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction</li> <li>Put a comma before the coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect: I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car. Correct: I want to go see a movie, but my sister has my car.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ul>		Everyone in this town will benefit the new nospital
<ul> <li>Almost all car companies care the environment</li> <li>Wearing a seat belt can protect you being killed in a car.</li> <li>Ten people were killed when a bus collided a car.</li> <li>The customers came to the shop to complain their service. Coordinating conjunctions always go between the words or phrases that they are connecting.</li> <li>Ex: Word +Word Phrase + Phrase Clause + Clause There are seven coordinating conjunctions in the English language. An easy way to remember the coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS F = for A = and N = nor B = but O = or Y = yet S = so</li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction</li> <li>Put a comma before the coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect: I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ul>		For two full days, the man was fighting his life.
<ul> <li>Almost all car companies care the environment</li> <li>Wearing a seat belt can protect you being killed in a car.</li> <li>Ten people were killed when a bus collided a car.</li> <li>The customers came to the shop to complain their service. Coordinating conjunctions always go between the words or phrases that they are connecting.</li> <li>Ex: Word +Word Phrase + Phrase Clause + Clause There are seven coordinating conjunctions in the English language. An easy way to remember the coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS F = for A = and N = nor B = but O = or Y = yet S = so</li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction</li> <li>Put a comma before the coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect: I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ul>		My dad shouled me because I didn t do what he said
<ul> <li>17. Wearing a seat belt can protect you being killed in a car.</li> <li>18. Ten people were killed when a bus collided a car.</li> <li>19. The customers came to the shop to complain their service. Coordinating conjunctions always go between the words or phrases that they are connecting.</li> <li>Ex: Word +Word Phrase + Phrase Clause + Clause There are seven coordinating conjunctions in the English language. An easy way to remember the coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS F = for A = and N = nor B = but O = or Y = yet S = so</li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction</li> <li>1. Put a comma before the coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect: I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car.</li> <li>2. When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas.</li> <li>3. When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ul>		Almost all car companies care the environment
<ul> <li>18. Ten people were killed when a bus collided a car.</li> <li>19. The customers came to the shop to complain their service. Coordinating conjunctions always go between the words or phrases that they are connecting.</li> <li>Ex: Word +Word Phrase + Phrase Clause + Clause There are seven coordinating conjunctions in the English language. An easy way to remember the coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS F = for A = and N = nor B = but O = or Y = yet S = so</li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction</li> <li>1. Put a comma before the coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect: I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car. Correct: I want to go see a movie, but my sister has my car.</li> <li>2. When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas. Correct: She likes apples and bananas.</li> <li>3. When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ul>		Wearing a seat belt can protect you being killed in a car
<ol> <li>19. The customers came to the shop to complain their service. Coordinating conjunctions always go between the words or phrases that they are connecting.</li> <li>Ex: Word +Word Phrase + Phrase Clause + Clause There are seven coordinating conjunctions in the English language. An easy way to remember the coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS F = for A = and N = nor B = but O = or Y = yet S = so</li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction</li> <li>Put a comma before the coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect : I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car. Correct: I want to go see a movie, but my sister has my car.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas. Correct: She likes apples and bananas.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ol>		Ten people were killed when a bus collided
<ul> <li>Coordinating conjunctions always go between the words or phrases that they are connecting.</li> <li>Ex: Word +Word Phrase + Phrase Clause + Clause There are seven coordinating conjunctions in the English language. An easy way to remember the coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS F = for A = and N = nor B = but O = or Y = yet S = so</li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction</li> <li>1. Put a comma before the coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect : I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car. Correct: I want to go see a movie, but my sister has my car.</li> <li>2. When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas. Correct: She likes apples and bananas.</li> <li>3. When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ul>		The customers came to the shop to complain their service.
<ul> <li>they are connecting.</li> <li>Ex: Word +Word Phrase + Phrase Clause + Clause There are seven coordinating conjunctions in the English language. An easy way to remember the coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS F = for A = and N = nor B = but O = or Y = yet S = so</li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction</li> <li>1. Put a comma before the coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect : I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car. Correct: I want to go see a movie, but my sister has my car.</li> <li>2. When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas. Correct: She likes apples and bananas.</li> <li>3. When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ul>		Coordinating conjunctions always go between the words or phrases that
<ul> <li>Ex: Word +Word Phrase + Phrase Clause + Clause There are seven coordinating conjunctions in the English language. An easy way to remember the coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS F = for A = and N = nor B = but O = or Y = yet S = so</li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction</li> <li>Put a comma before the coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect : I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car. Correct: I want to go see a movie, but my sister has my car.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas. Correct: She likes apples and bananas.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ul>		they are connecting.
<ul> <li>An easy way to remember the coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS <ul> <li>F = for</li> <li>A = and</li> <li>N = nor</li> <li>B = but</li> <li>O = or</li> <li>Y = yet</li> <li>S = so</li> </ul> </li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction <ol> <li>Put a comma before the coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> </ol> </li> <li>Ex: Incorrect : I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car. <ol> <li>Correct: I want to go see a movie, but my sister has my car.</li> </ol> </li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas. <ol> <li>Correct: She likes apples and bananas.</li> </ol> </li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ul>	Ex:	
<ul> <li>An easy way to remember the coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS <ul> <li>F = for</li> <li>A = and</li> <li>N = nor</li> <li>B = but</li> <li>O = or</li> <li>Y = yet</li> <li>S = so</li> </ul> </li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction <ol> <li>Put a comma before the coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> </ol> </li> <li>Ex: Incorrect : I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car. <ol> <li>Correct: I want to go see a movie, but my sister has my car.</li> </ol> </li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas. <ol> <li>Correct: She likes apples and bananas.</li> </ol> </li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ul>		There are seven coordinating conjunctions in the English language.
<ul> <li>B = but O = or Y = yet S = so</li> <li>Rules for using a coordinating conjunction</li> <li>Put a comma before the coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect : I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car. Correct: I want to go see a movie, but my sister has my car.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas. Correct: She likes apples and bananas.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ul>		An easy way to remember the coordinating conjunctions is to remember FANBOYS.
<ol> <li>Put a comma before the coordinating conjunction</li> <li>Put a comma before the coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect : I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car. Correct: I want to go see a movie, but my sister has my car.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas. Correct: She likes apples and bananas.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ol>		
<ol> <li>Put a comma before the coordinating conjunction when it is used to connect two independent clauses.</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect : I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car. Correct: I want to go see a movie, but my sister has my car.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas. Correct: She likes apples and bananas.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ol>		
<ul> <li>independent clauses.</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect : I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car.</li> <li>Correct: I want to go see a movie, but my sister has my car.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas.</li> <li>Correct: She likes apples and bananas.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ul>		
<ul> <li>Correct: I want to go see a movie, but my sister has my car.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas.</li> <li>Correct: She likes apples and bananas.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ul>	1.	
<ol> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas. Correct: She likes apples and bananas.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ol>	Ex:	Incorrect : I want to go see a movie but my sister has my car.
<ol> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma</li> <li>Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas. Correct: She likes apples and bananas.</li> <li>When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li> </ol>		Correct: I want to go see a movie, but my sister has my car.
<ul><li>Ex: Incorrect: She likes apples, and bananas.</li><li>Correct: She likes apples and bananas.</li><li>3. When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in</li></ul>	2.	When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma.
Correct: She likes apples and bananas. 3. When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in	Ex:	
3. When using a coordinating conjunction with a list of items (three or more in		
	З	
	5.	

123

Ex: She is cooking chicken, potatoes, corn, and carrot. (With comma) She is cooking chicken, potatoes, corn and carrot. (Without comma)

## Functions of coordinating conjunctions

Coordinating	Functions	Example
Conjunction		
For	for explaining why	He's overweight, for he eats too many cakes and
	[more formal and less common than	biscuits.
	because]	
And	the same, similar or equal; without contrast	His favorite snacks are cakes and biscuits.
Nor	for two non-contracting grammatically	He descrift est eske her desc he est hissuits
NOT	for two non-contrasting grammatically	He doesn't eat cake, nor does he eat biscuits.
	negative items	[= He doesn't eat cake and he doesn't eat biscuits.]
	(not + not)	
But	for contrast	I eat cake, but I never eat biscuits; I don't like them.
Or	alternative	Would you like cake or biscuits with your coffee?
Yet	contrast, despite something [synonyms =	He's overweight and feels terrible, yet he continues
	nevertheless, but still]	to eat lots of cakes and biscuits.
So	for showing the consequence of something	He was very hungry, so he ate all the cake.

#### **Examples:**

I will be late to the party, for I am working until seven.

Tom likes to read and write.

Sally does not like the mountains, nor does she like the ocean.

I wanted to ride my bike, but the tire was flat.Fred wants peas or carrots for su love chocolate, yet I do not eat chocolate ice cream.

#### **Subordinating Conjunctions**

Subordinating conjunctions are essential parts of complex sentences with include at least two clauses, with one of the clauses being main (independent) and the other being subordinated (dependent).

#### **Functions of Subordinating**

	-	
Subordinating	Functions	Example
conjunction		
because, so that, as,	to express cause	Pavan didn't go to work yesterday because he was ill. [reason]
since, in order that	or reason	As he was feeling unwell, Pavan didn't go to work yesterday.
		[cause, reason; more formal than because]
before, after, until /		I'll call you as soon as I get home. [time]
till, when, as soon as,	to express time	I'll wait until you arrive. [time]
whenever ,since,	-	He said everything before he left [time]
while, as long as,		The child feels very happy whenever he gets holiday. [time]
unless, if, even if, in		f he doesn't change his attitude, he'll lose his job.
case, providing	to express	Even if you win a million dollars, it doesn't mean you'll be
as if,	condition	happy.

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

although, even though, whereas	to express contrast or concession	Naveen is tall and strong, whereas his brother is short and weak. [comparison] Mark's very tall, although he's not as tall as his father yet. [comparison] Although they're poor, they're happy. [concession] Even though he's rich, I'm not sure that he's happy. [concession]
Where, wherever	To express	I visit the zoo where I saw a big giraffe.
	place	She has to follow you wherever you go.

#### Fill in the blanks with the appropriate linking words choosing from the brackets:

- Vinutha ...... her sister entered the house,\_\_\_\_\_ there was no electricity ...... they took out a box of matches and lit a lamp. ..... they couldn't see anything. 1. (still, but, and, so) Ans:and, but, so, still
- 2. ...... Venkatram is a rich man, he is not generous. ...... his wife helps the needy ...... she was from a poor family ....suffered a lot.. (though,because,and,but) Ans:though,but,because,and
- Suresh ...... Mahesh went to the bus station ..... they missed the bus. 3. ..... they entered the station, the bus left.....they could not board the bus. (but, as soon as, and, so) Ans:and,but,as soon as,so
- 4. Ramanna is rich ..... sad ..... sad discontented. He owns hundred acres of land which he has inherited from his ancestors. He does not possess ..... wife ..... childre (or, but, and, either) Ans:but,and,either,or
- Abdul Kalaam was a disciplined person ..... he was from a poor family, he be-5. came popular. He made a name ..... as a scientist ..... as a states man ..... he was service dedicative. (not only, though, but also, because) Ans:though,not only,but also,because
- Radhakrishnan was a teacher. Everybody liked him ..... he had lot of patience 6. while teaching. ..... any student didn't have money to pay fees, he would give him money, ...... he was kind ..... service minded. (If, and, because, as) Ans:because,if,as.and
- 7. The people did not help Roma\_\_\_\_\_ they were afraid of being involved.\_\_\_\_Baleshwar alone had to take Roma. He requested the passerby to help him\_\_\_\_\_, no one heeded him.A tempo truck driver stopped \_\_\_\_\_ took Roma to the hospital. (so.but.and.because) Ans:because ,so but,and
- The people of Tibet suffered from cold ..... hunger. They decided to send 8. Wangjia to find bird of happiness...... he was a smart boy ...... he was a small boy, he was determined ..... the others hesitated to go (because, and, though, while) Ans:and,because,though,while
- Ram ....... Raju are twin brothers. Ram is hard working ......Raju is lazy ......... he 9. is lazy he is smart. His father knows ..... he would achieve a lot in his life. (that, but, and, though) Ans:and,but,though,that

## MODALS

- Modals are helping verbs
- Used with the base form of the verb, modals create verbal phrases.
- Modals do not change form.
- Modals never end in "s" even in 3rd person singular Use "not" to make modal verbs negative.
- Don't use double modals.
- Modals lack past tense forms, except could and would which serve as the past of can and will.

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

125

List of models Present form past form			
Will	would		
Can	could		
Shall	should		
May	might		
Must	(had to - in rep	ported speech)	
Semi models			
Ought to	Need to	Used to	Dare to

# Ought toNeed toDifferent language functions of model

1. Can

Functions	Examples
	I can ride a bike.
Present ability	I can make jewelry.
	He can't speak French.
	Can you open this jar?
	Can I try to ride the bike now?
Asking permission	Can I use your bathroom?
	Can I leave now?
	Can I raise the volume
	You can take this spot if you like.
Giving permission	You can do whatever you want.
	You can read English as well.
	Anyone can learn to ride a bike
Possibility	I can lift heavy weight
	She can speak English fluently,
	Can you teach me to ride a bike?
Request –	Can you help me?
	Can you get me a glass of water?
	I can teach you.
willingness –	I can submit project tomorrow.
	I can meet him today.

## 2. Could

	I Could ride a bike.
Past ability	I Could make jewelry.
	He Couldn't speak French.
	Could you open this jar?
	Could I try to ride the bike now?
Asking permission politely	Could I use your bathroom?
	Could I leave now?
	Could I raise the volume
	You Could take this spot if you like.
Giving permission politely	You Could do whatever you want.
	You Could read English as well.
	I could have learnt to ride a bike.
Possibility in past	He could have broken your leg.
	Could you teach me to ride a bike?
Request politely	Could you help me?
	Could you get me a glass of water?

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

## 3. will

future intent	I will go riding on Saturday.
	My sister will reach home at 5.pm
prediction	The will be strong by next 2-3 hours
	There will be strike tomorrow.
Request	Will you give your pen to me?
	Will you come with me?
permission	You will go and join the class
	He will be allowed to select anything

## 4. would

future intent in	I would go riding
the past	She thought her sister would reach home at 5.pm
prediction	The will be strong by next 2-3 hours
	There will be strike tomorrow.
Request politely	Would you give your pen to me?
	Would you come with me?
Permission	You would go and join the class
politely	He would be allowed to select anything
Offer politely	Would you like to wear jeans?
	Would you join to our party?

## 5. may

Asking permission	May I come in?
	May I tell one truth?
Giving permission	You may get in
	You may tell
Possibility	It may rain
	She may get good marks
Wishes	May god bless you
	May new year fill peace in your life.
	May all your wishes come true.

		Simple future	I shall talk with you
6.	shall		He shall advice us
0.	Shan	Offering	Shall we go horse riding ?
			Shall I carry books for you ?
		suggestions	Shall I get dinner parcel
		Instructions	What shall I do now?
		(asking /giving)	You shall list out all odd numbers.
		Promise	I shall take care of my students
			I shall score well
		Shall is substitute	You have to tell me
		with 'have to'	

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

127

#### 5. Should

	People with high cholesterol should eat low-fat foods.
recommendation,/ advisability	She should work hard
(can be replaced with ought to)	You really should start eating better
	People should wear helmet while riding bike.
Obligation	We should be careful
(can be replaced with suppose to)	I should be at work before 9:00.
	We should return the video before the video rental store closes.
	Susan should be in New York by now.
Expectation	Susan should have arrived in New York last week. Let's call her and
(can be replaced with suppose to)	see what she is up to.
	Susan should be in New York by next week. Her new job starts on
	Monday.

#### 6. Must

	There must be river.
Certainty	That must have been the right restaurant.
	It must be very hot today
Necessity	You must have a permit to enter the national park.
(American prefers have to)	We must get marks card to admit to collage
	You must drink sufficient water
strong recommendation	You must take some time off and get some rest.
(can be replaced with should	You should take some tome off and get some rest.
	I must follow the teachers guidance.
	You must not swim in that river. It's full of crocodiles.
prohibition	
	You must not forget to take your malaria medication while
	your are in the tropics

### 7. Ought to

Advise	You ought to clean the room	
Obligation/ duty	You ought to pay school fee by tomorrow	
	Every people ought to help	

## Used to:Used to is usually followed by an infinitive:

Ex:We used to swim in the river.

	I used to sing song in my childhood
To express past habitual action	My mother used to go walk everyday
	He used to collect stamps in his school days

## Dare ( used often without 'to')

To show boldness / courage	How dare you go there?
	You dare not

## Used to:Used to is usually followed by an infinitive:

Ex:We used to swim in the river.

	I used to sing song in my childhood
To express past habitual action	My mother used to go walk everyday
	He used to collect stamps in his school days

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

128

#### Exercises : Use sutaible model a. I ..... be happy to meet Robinson. 1. 2. ..... he play for our team? ..... I get a prize if I stand first in the examination? 3. I ..... be able to beat him. (Express possibility) 4. 5. Watch and pray lest you ..... fall into temptation. 6. The old man ..... recline in a corner and sleep most of the time. (Express a habitual action in the past) 7. I ..... rather read a novel than watch that stupid movie. 8. ...... you mind lending me your pen for a minute? Till last year, I ..... read without glasses. 9. If I ..... fly like a bird, I ..... be with you now. 10. 11. The teacher said we ..... read this book for our own pleasure as it is optional. But we ..... read it if we don't want to. 12. .....you stand on your head for more than a minute? No, I ..... 13. If you want to learn to speak English fluently, you ...... to work hard. 14. Take an umbrella. It ..... rain later. 15. You ... leave small objects lying around . Such objects ..... be swallowed by children. 16. People ..... walk on grass. 17. Drivers ..... stop when the traffic lights are red. 18. .....I ask a question? Yes, of course. 19. You ..... take your umbrella. It is not raining. 20. .....you speak Italian? No, ..... Answers 1. will / shall 2. Will 3. Will 4. should. 5. should 6. would 7. would 8. Would 9. could 10. could would 11.can needn't 12.Can I can't. 13.need 17.must 14. might 15. shouldn't may 16.mustn't 18.May 19.needn't 20.Can can't. ill in the blank with appropriate modal: It ..... rain 1. a. can b. may c. would d. Could .....I come in? 2. d. Would a. may b. might c. will

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

129

3.	you carry t	hese files for me?		
	a. should	b. <b>would</b>	c. may	d. Might
4.	I have a	look at your essay?	,	5
	a. might	b. would	c. will	d. May
5.	You h	elp your friend.		-
	a. need	b. dare	c. have	d. Must
6.	you agree	with this discussion?		
	a. may	b. might	c. would	d. Must
7.	you spea	ak English?		
	a. <b>can</b>	b. must	c. might	d. Shall
8.	God b	less you!		
	a. might	b. may	c. should	d. Shall
9.	We wea	ar helmet while riding.		
	a. <b>should</b>	b. could	c. might	d. Need
10.	Aunt vi	sit us tomorrow		
	a. have	b. might	c. dare to	d. Could
den	tify the language f	unction :		
1	Could you spare so	ome time, sir?		
	a. request	b. apolize	c.order	d.questioning
2.	you are absolutely	right		
	a expressing agro	ement	b. expressing o d. wishing	disagreement
3.	if you dont mind co	uld i use your pen?	5	
	a. questioning	5	b. seeking info	rmation
	c.requesting		d. expressing	
4.	i'm really greatful to	o you		
	a. complimenting	b. wishing.	c.requesting	
	d. expressing gra	titude		
5.	i'm very sorry			
	a. apologizing	b. ordering	c. complimenti	ng
	d.expressing gratite	ude		
6.	You shouldconsult	a doctor		
	a. ordering		b. expressing a	agrement
	c. suggesting		d. seeking inf	ormation

7.	Dont worry everything will be all right					
	a. sympathising	b. giving direction	c. suggesting.	d. requesting		
8.	Shut the door					
	a. suggesting	b. requesting	c ordering	d. giving direction		
9.	story books are on t	he fifth shelf in the s	econd row from here	e		
	a. giving information	on	b. seeking inforation	n		
	c. orderiong		d. requesting			
10.	Dont touch the pane	l it's danger				
	a. ordering	b. warning	c. suggestion	c. requesting		

# **COMBINDING SENTENCES**

- 1. By using too ...to..
- 2. by using so,....that...not.....

The adverb too means 'more than is necessary' or 'more than was expected'. It has a negative meaning.

The structure too...to has a similar meaning.

Too is used before an adjective and to is used with a verb of second clause.

- Ex- Teacher came very late. He couldn't start a new lesson. Teacher came too late to start a new lesson.
- 2. When the clauses have different subjects. and then we use a structure with 'for'.
- Ex: The tea was very hot. I couldn't drink it. Here the tea and I are the subject The tea was too hot for me to drink it (here for is used with object form of the subject of second clause.)
- **3.** 'so' is used in the place of 'too' (with adjective)
- 4. 'that' is used as conjunction to combine the two clauses.
- **5.** 'can / could' is used depends of tense with not. Can is used with present tense, could is used with past tense.

131

Ex. Teacher came very late. He couldn't start a new lesson. Teacher came too late to start a new lesson.

## Teacher came so late that he could not start a new lesson.

## Exercise :

## Combine the sentence first using to ..to then so......that.....not

- 1. The box is very heavy. I cannot lift it.
- 2. My brother worked hard. He passed the test.

- 3. My grandfather is very weak. He cannot walk.
- 4. She is very short. She cannot touch the ceiling.

## Answers :

- 1. The box is so heavy that I cannot lift it.
- 2. My brother worked too hard to pass the test
- 3. My grandfather is so weak that he cannot survive.
- 4. She is so short that she cannot touch the ceiling.

## Sentence combing by using 'not only...... but also......'

Not only — but also is a correlative conjunction.

- It is placed immediately before the words or expressions that are to be combined.
- When using a correlative conjunction, both clauses have to be parallel. (it should be used before two nouns, two adjectives, two verbs etc
- Ex: They need not only food but also shelter.(Here we use nouns(food and shelter)after not only and but also.)

She is not only rich but also generous. (Here we use adjectives (rich and generous) after not only and but also.)

My uncle not only brought me to the city but also found a good job for me.

(Here we use verb phrases after not only and but also.)

Not only Ravi is a good dancer but also His brother is a good singer.( here two entire sentence to be connected)

Not only Rama but also Laxman goes to forest.( here two subject are connected)

## Exercises :

- 1. There are problems with the children. There are problems with their parents.
- 2. He can make people laugh. He can make people cry.
- 3. She writes plays for television. She acts in movies.
- 4. I sent him many letters. I also tried to telephone him.

## Answers :

- 1. There are problems not only with the children but also with their parents.
- 2. He can not only make people laugh, but also make them cry. / Not only can he make people laugh; but he can also make them cry.
- 3. She not only writes plays for television but also acts in movies.
- 4. I not only sent him many letters but also tried to telephone him.

## Combining sentences using ' either...or...., and neither...... nor......'

• These two are correlative conjunctions and these are also placed immediately before the part of sentence to be connected.

- Either ...or ... is used to join two affirmative (positive) sentences when referring to a choice between two possibilities
- Neither ...nor... is used join two negative sentences when you want to say that two or more things are not true
- Ex: He is a fool. He is a madman. He is either a fool or a madman.

He does not drink. He does not smoke. He neither drinks nor smokes.

## Combine the sentences using (either..or../ neither....nor)

- 1. The doctor will help you. The nurse will help you.
- 2. The store owner isn't here today. The store manager isn't here today
- 3. Maybe the team is practicing in the gym. Maybe the team is practicing outdoors.
- 4. I am not watching the movie on TV. I am not watching the movie on my laptop.

#### Answer :

- 1. Either doctor or nurse will help you
- 2. Neither the store owner nor the store manager here today.
- 3. The team is practicing either in the gym or outdoors
- 4. I am watching the movie on neither T V nor my laptop

#### Combining sentences by using as soon as and no sooner...than.

- he expression 'no sooner...than' is used to suggest that one action or situation takes place/took place immediately after another action or situation.
- When 'no sooner' goes at the beginning of the sentence, we use interrogative form of sentence beginning with helping verb depends of tense.
- No sooner / as well as introduces the event that occurred first.
- Ex: I got up from bed, I took a bath.

As soon as I got up from bed, I took a bath.

No sooner did I get up from bed than I took a bath.

#### Exercise :

- 1. She read the telegram. She fainted at once.
- 2. The thieves saw the police. They ran away at once.
- 3. The child started crying. His mother lifted him up at once.
- 4. I went to bed. Soon I fell asleep.

#### Answers :

- 1. As soon as she read the telegram, she fainted.
  - No sooner did she read the telegram than she fainted.

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers) 133

- As soon as the thieves see the police, they ran away.
   No sooner did the thieves see the police than they ran away.
- As soon as the thieves see the police, they ran away
   No sooner did the child start crying than his mother lifted him up.
- As soon as I go to bed , I fell asleep.
   No sooner did I go to bed than I fell asleep.

# **REFERENCE SKILL**

## Decode the following sms into normal sentences.

u 1 d match 1. (you won the match) 2. 2 n 2 makes 4 (two and two makes four) 3. Pls cum b4 its l8 (please come before it is late) 4. Vrru? (where are u?) 5. Hwru? (how are u?) 6. R u hpy? (are you happy?) 7. I 8 rice 4 lunch (I ate rice for lunch) 8. Go hm erly (go home early) 9. Gud nt. (good niigt) 10. V r rdy to go. (we are ready to go)

# To which source of information will you refer to know the following. Choose the appropriate answer.

- Pronunciation of a word ......
   (grammar book, atlas, dictionary, newspaper) Ans:dictionary
- The place where first nuclear bombs exploded ......
   (encyclopedia, dictionary, manual, the saurus) Ans:encyclopedia
- To assemble the TV you recently bought. (atlas, TV manual, newspaper, dictionary) Ans:TV manual
- Details about the rivers of a country ...... (newspaper, manual, grammar book, atlas) Ans:atlas
- To know who won world cup match which was played the previous day. (atlas, encyclopedia, newspaper, thesaurus) Ans:newspaper

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

- Variations of the word 'Compose' (newspaper, encyclopedia, thesaurus, atlas) Ans:thesaurus
- To know the spelling of the word "encyclopedia". (newspaper, dictionary, thesaurus, atlas) Ans:dictionary
- Synonym of the word 'Prosper'. (manual, dictionary, atlas, newspaper) Ans:thesaurus

## Arrange the following words in dictionary order.

- 1. Charm, Churn, Choke, Chase.
- 3. Prosper, Proper, Propel, Property. metry.
- 5. Technical, Technician, Technology, Technique.
- 7. Bench, Beach, Beauty, Beast.
- 9. debut, debit, debris, debate
- 11. ocean, orange, order, open
- 13. rainbow, raindrop, railway, raincoat
- 15. mango, marriage, manager, mankind
- 17. crest, create, creep, credit
- 19. strained, strain, shrine, justice
- 21. cat, beat, suit, dog
- 23. useless, friend, wise, tree
- 25. full, lawyer, white, read
- 27. running, going, missing, joking
- 29. examination, preparation, situation, business
- 30. ambition, education, determination, popularity.

\* \* \* \* \*

- 2. Quaint, Quality, Quantum, Quarter
- 4. Sympathy, System, Symptom, Sym-
- 6. Adore, Address, Admire, Admit.
- 8. Garland, Gallow, Gamble, Gambit
- 10. reason, ranson, revenge, repair
- 12. daughter, doctor, deter, dollar
- 14. supper, super, sleeper, slipper
- 16. tea, teacher, teach, teachers
- 18. moment, movement, mute, manage
- 20. better, butter, bitter, bite
- 22. door, yellow, busy, work
- 24. goat, high, waste, team
- 26. damage, beautiful, garden, tiger
- 28. having, jumping, reading, leading

# **QUESTION PAPER, APRIL - 2018**

## SECTION - A - PROSE

- I. Four alternatives' are. given for each of the following questions / incomplete statements. Only one of them is correct or most appropriate. Choose the correct alternative and write the complete answer along with its letter of alphabet. 3x1=3
- Father did not like Swami 1. (A) joining the cricket club (B) sleeping in the office room (D) biting a burglar's leg. (C) sleeping beside his granny 2. Roma Talreja felt that she could never repay Baleshwar because he (A) informed Dinesh about the accident (B) requested all the motorists to save her (C) risked his life to save her (D) pleaded the passengers to save her. 3. The concept "immersion in science doesn't go with practical sense" suggests (A) foolishness of scientists (B) absent mindedness of scientists (C) scientists do not bother about their research results (D) scientists seldom work together. П. Answer the following questions in 2 - 3 sentences each:  $4 x^2 = 8$ 4. How did the tempo truck driver help Baleshwar? What was the intention of Smita's going to the concert ? 5. "The artists visiting Anant was unusual" Justify. 6. 7. Despite low income, why do some people choose to become scientists ? Read the following extracts and answer the questions that follow :  $3 \times 3 = 9$ Ш. 8. "Why don't you join the police when you are grown up ?" (a) Who gave this suggestion ? (b) Why did he give this suggestion ? (c) What did the listener actually want to become in his later life? "The trees in the orchard are not mine." 9. (a) Who is the speaker here ? (b) According to the speaker, who else do the trees belong to? (c) Why does he feel that the trees don't belong to him? "Who could have dreamt that one born to a Mahar family would one day become not 10. only a Law Minister but a Law-maker ......?" (a) Who is referred to as 'Law Minister'here ?

136

\_\_\_\_\_

- (b) Who chose him to be the law minister?
- (c) Why is he recognised as the law-maker ?
- IV. Answer the following question in about 8 10 sentences :

4

4

4

11. How did the crew members express their discontent with Columbus ? OR Explain the incident that forced Satish to stay back at home. How did it affect his formal education?

## POETRY

- V. Choose the most appropriate one and write the complete answer with the letter of alphabet in the answer-book : 1
  12. In the line, You say you own me', the terms 'you' and 'me' refer to (A) children and the farmer (B) man and the land
- (C) soldier and the land (D) buyer and seller of the land.
- VI. Answer the following questions in 2 3 sentences each:  $2x^2 = 4$
- 13. How does the poet praise India being developed in industry and technology?
- 14. The speaker in 'Off To, Outer Space Tomorrow Morning is uncertain of his return. How does he express this ?
- VII. Read the given extract and answer the questions that follow : 3x1=3
- 15. "Isn't God upon the ocean
  - Just the same as on the land ?"
  - (a) Who is the speaker here ?
  - (b) When was this said ?
  - (c) What was the result of these words ?

## VIII. 16. Quote from memory :

"It is		"Then let
himself		destroy :
And	OR	Whilst
justice."		boy."

## IX. Answer the following question in 8 to 10 sentences :

17. Describe in your own words how the poet's grandma was a genius and how she upheld 'her right to reside in a tree"

OR

The physical appearance of the Jazz player does not match when he plays on his saxophone. Explain.

## SUPPLEMENTARY READING

## X. Answer the following questions in 2 - 3 sentences each :

18. Why were Babu and Manju a bit disappointed with the way the students were marching?

OR

How did the lofty Himalayas inspire Dick-v Dolma?

19. How did Hema Aziz teach her children the message that "one's duty is the most important thing in life" ?

OR

What changes came over wangjia as the Bird of Happiness caressed him ?

## VOCABULARY

- 20. Which one of the following words has one syllable ? Father, Cheque, Office, Travel.
- 21. Combine the word in Column-A with its collocative word Column-B : Column-A Column-B

Rustling { fruits,, leaves, waves. vegetables }

- 22. Fitl in the blanks choosing the appropriate words given in brackets : The . ...... ( not, knot ) of the rope was so strong that rt could ( knot, not ) be removed by us.
- 23. Give one word for 'very eager for knowledge'

## SECTION - B - READING

## XII. Read the following passage and answer the questions that follow : 4x1=4

Once there was a slave. His name was Andracles. His master was very cruel. He treated him badly. So, the slave was sick of him and ran away into a forest. There he saw a lion crying with pain. The lion sat before him and held out its paw. There was a big thorn in it. The slave drew it out and dressed the wound. They became friends. After a few days, the slave was caught. He was ordered to be thrown before a hungry lion. Many people came to see the act of cruelty. A lion was caught for this purpose. It was kept hungry for many days. On the fixed day, the lion was let loose on the slave. It recognised him. It began to lick his feet. All the people were surprised. The slave told the whole story. The master was pleased and set Andracles free.

## **Questions**:

- 24. What made Andracles go to the forest ?
- 25. How did Andracles helP the lion ?
- 26. What act of cruelty did the people go to watch?

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

138

27.	Why didn't the lion kili Andracles ?
<b>Z</b> 1.	

- 28. Rearrange the jumbled words into a meaningful sentence : garden / flowers / in I tlne / pluck / don't
- Look at the two lines. Write a sentence using longer than'based on what you see: 1
   6cm
   7cm

<----->

#### Read the following conversation and answer the questions that follow :

News Reporter : Congratulations Rashmi ! Your feat is laudable. By the way, did you expect first rank in the CET this year ?

Rashmi : No. Actually I expected to be one in top ten ranks.

News Reporter : How could you achieve this ?

Rashmi : I worked hard from the beginning. My teachers, my college library, my parents were of great help to me.

- 30. Why does the news reporter congrats Rashmi?
- 31. What was the secret of Rashmi's achievement ?

## WRITING

XIII. 32. Given below is the profile of Rabindranath Tagore. Write a paragraph using the clues given below.

Given below is the profile of Rabindranath Tagore.

Write a paragraph using the clues given below :

Known in Bengal as	:	Gurudev	
Birth	:	7th May, 1861	
Parents	:	Debendranath Tagore and Sarala Devi	
Occupation		Writer, Painter, Singer	
Notable works	:	Gitanjali, Jana Gana Mana, Rabindra Sangeet,	
		Amar Sonar Bangla etc.	
Award	:	Nobel Prize for literature in 1913	
Death	:	7th August, 1941.	
		OR	

Write a paragraph, using the clues given below. You may add some more points if necessary :

Twelve fools start on a journey — cross a river — count themselves — one man lost — a passer-by offers help — gives each a blow on the back — they count twelve strokes — satisfied — moral 33. Imagine that you are Divya / Dinesh, residing at 'Sai Nivas', #74, I Cross, Vivek Nagar, Hiriyur.

Write a letter to your cousin inviting him / her to come to your house to spend summer vacation.

OR

Write a letter to the Chief Officer, Town Municipal Council, Hiriyur about the garbage dumped in your locality and request him / her to do the needful.

34. The following paragraph has two errors. Edit the paragraph and rewrite it in the answer-book. Clues are given.

Whales are normally gentle. Many whales exibit strong family ties. The young ones remain with their parents for up to fifteen years or more. How wonderful it is. Clues :

- (a) Spelling mistake to be corrected
- (b) Use correct punctuation mark.

## GRAMMAR (LANGUAGE USE)

XIV.

<i>/</i> (11)							
35.	Read the given conversation and choose the language function for the underlined sentence : 1						
	Visitor : Excuse me	Visitor : Excuse me, can you help me in locating the book, 'War And Peace' ?					
Librarian : Sure. Go to the sixth row and the book is on the third shelf.							
	Visitor : Thank you	-					
	(A) Advice	(B) Giving directions	(C) Order	(D) Request.			
36.	Read the conversa	tion and rewrite into a re	eported form :	2			
	Ravi : Good mornir	ng daddy.					
	Father : Good morn	ing Ravi. Go to the railwa	y station at 4 P.M. an	d bring your grandpa.			
	Ravi : I will daddy, o	don't worry.					
	Ravi and father gre	eted each other.					
	Father asked Ravi						
	Ravi replied						
37.	Fill in the blanks with	th appropriate 'article'an	d 'preposition' :	$2x^{1/2} = 1$			
	There are number of newspapersKannada and English						
38.	Gopi broke the glas	s?					
The question tag to be used for the above statement is							
	(A) did he	(B) was he	(C) wasn't he	(D) didn't he.			
		· ·					

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

SSLC - ENGLISH - 2018

39.	Fill in the blanks with appropriate tense forms of the verbs given in brackets : $2x1=2$						
		woman. She ( <i>have + visit</i> )					
40.	Fill in the blanks using the suitable linking words given in brackets : $2x^{1/2} = 1$ The flight in which I travelled was delayed the sky was very cloudy. , my parents were much worried about my safety. ( <i>but, so, because, that</i> )						
41.	Read the conversation and fill in the blanks with correct 'if clause' choosing from the given alternatives :						
	Neighbour : Hi Ranjith, Did you get a seat in the college you desired ?						
	Ranjith : No uncle, my application was rejected due to my low scores.						
	Neighbour : I am sorry to hear this. If you had worked harder, you got a seat in the college.						
	(A) will have	(B) shall have	(C) would have	(D) should have.			
42.	Read the conversation and identify the infinitive : 1						
	Cook : What shall I cook for dinner tonight, Sir ?						
	Master : Prepare some special items. I am expecting two guests to come for dinner.						
	Cook : Alright Sir, what about Pulao and Halwa ?						
42.	Master : Okay, also make some fruit salad.						
	Cook : Yes Sir.						
	(A) prepare	(B) expecting	(C) to come	(D) make.			
	() [ ]	REFERENC	. ,	( )			
XV.							
ΛV.	Arrange the felle	wing words in the order	in which they are four	nd in dictionany :			

- 43. Arrange the following words in the order in which they are found in dictionary : adverb, advocate, advise, advice.
- 44. Write it in the normal way : my sis gt 80% in mats test
- 45. Which source of information would you refer to know about global warming ? Choose the correct source : Thesaurus, Encyclopaedia, Atlas, Dictionary.

\* \* \* \* \*

# **KEY ANSWER, APRIL - 2018**

- 1. C - sleeping beside his granny
- 2. C - risked his life to save her
- 3. B - absentmindedness of scientists
- offered place in his vehicle to take 4. Roma to hospital
  - lent his phone to inform her family
  - did not expect money or thanks.
- to listen to the sitar by Pandit 5. Ravishankar

- to request Pandit Ravishankar to come home and play sitar to her brother Anant

- wanted to fulfil her brother's last wish.
- 6. The artists, great maestros
  - play usually in big auditoriums
  - have busy schedules
  - yet agreed to play sitar for Anant
  - wanted to fulfil Anant's last wish.
- 7. Science - an exciting adventure - major reward is discovery itself - get freedom, camara derie and independence instead of money.
- 8. a) The inspector

b) Swami helped the police by catching a burglar.

c) An engine driver, a railway guard or a bus conductor.

- 9. a) Don Anselmo
  - b) to the children of Rio en Medio

c) because whenever a child was born in Rio en Medio, he had planted a tree in the name of that child.

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

- 10. a) Dr. B. R. Ambedkar.
  - b) Jawaharlal Nehru

c) because Dr. Ambedkar had played a vital role in drafting the constitution as the chairman of the Drafting Committee.

- Skilful in the field of law and legislation.

11. Sailed for days and months - could not sight land - sailors homesick desperate - wanted to go back - their appeal to Columbus was in vain seamen drank too much - revolted. Guillermo called him a devil - said. 'Santa Marla will be lighter for his carcass' - Diego compared seamen to bats flying by day - Francisco refused to bring Guillermo - behaved very rudely - tried to kill Columbus.

## OR

Satish met with accident when he went hiking - crossed a weak bridge - fell into the river - injured badly - head hurt legs fractured - operations - infections - fever, lost his hearing - could not go to school for many days - father approached schools for his admission admission refused - hearing problem became desperate - forced to stay at home.

- 12. B) man and the land
- 13. Poet praises dams, lakes, industries, ship building yards, hard working Indians try to improve technology and to raise India's global position in atomic science.
- 14. to take a last look at him

- to cross out his name from the telephone book

- to start the countdown.
- 15. a) The Captain's little daughter.

b) When the captain lost his confidence as the ship was caught in a storm.

c) The sailors regained faith and confide-nce, prayed, reached the shore safely.

16. It is enthroned in the heart of kings;

It is an attribute to God himself;

And earthly power doth then show likest God's

When mercy seasons justice.

## OR

Then let not what I cannot have

My cheer of mind destroy :

Whilst thus I sing, I am a king.

Although a poor blind boy.

17. The poet's grandma was a genius because she could climb trees - any type of trees, spreaded or high - fond of climbing trees, even at the age of sixty-two - though advised to stop, would not stop - once stuck up in a tree and rescued - doctor advised rest - it was a 'brief season in hell' - demanded a tree house - the poet and his father built her a tree house - shifted and lived in tree house upholding 'her right to live in a tree'.

#### OR

The Jazz player - pathetic appearance - old, wrinkled face - dressed in old shirt, old jacket and old necktie - old shoes having papers in them - when playing saxophone, - forgets himself -

Complete Solution (Questions & Answers)

143

appears as if he was sent to preach the old Gospel of Jazz - no longer a man but a bird - mind reaches higher place - when stops - back to his poor life.

## Supplementary Reading

 A silent march - no slogans - no shouts - did not cross barred area - not arrested.

## OR

Fascinated by the grand, snow-clad peaks of the Himalayas - her house surrounded by the beautiful mountains
first thing to see every morning.

 Hanif's mother Hema Aziz had a touring job - out very often - would leave children alone to take care of themselves - taught them the message.

## OR

- The Bird of Happiness caressed Wangjia gently with its wings - His eyeballs flew back to their sockets regained vision - wounds healed became stronger.

#### Vocabulary

- 20. Cheque
- 21. Rustling leaves
- 22. knot, not
- 23. Voracious.

## Section - B

- 24. Andracles was sick of his cruel master who treated him badly. So, he ran away into a forest.
- 25. Andracles drew a big thorn out of the lion's paw and dressed the wound.

26.	People went to watch the cruel act of a slave being thrown before a hungry lion.		Grammar (Language Use)		
_0.			B) Giving directions.		
27.	The lion recognised Andracles as the one who had healed its paw in the forest. So, it did not kill Andracles.		Father asked Ravi to go to the railway station at 4 P.M. and bring his grandpa.		
28.	Don't pluck flowers in the garden.		Ravi replied to his father that he would and told him not to worry.		
29.	The line $B$ is longer than the line $A$ .	37.	a, in		
30.	The news reporter congratulates	38.	D) didn't he		
	Rashmi because she has scored the first rank in CET.	39.	- loves		
31	Hard work from the beginning,		- had visited		
01.	encouragement from teachers and		because, so		
	parents, library work.	41.	C) would have		
Writing		42.	C) to come		
32.	Sequence of points		Reference Skill		
	Accuracy of language	43.	adverb, advice, advise, advocate.		
33.	Format, Body of the letter	44.	My sister got 80% in Maths test.		
34.	Spelling 'exhibit'	45.	Encyclopaedia		
 Com	plete Solution (Questions & Answers) 14	14	SSLC - ENGLISH - 2018		